

HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 2008





On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook on the PEUGEOT website, under "MyPEUGEOT".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.



If the "MyPEUGEOT" function is not available on the PEUGEOT public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

<http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/>

Select:

- > the language,
- > the vehicle, its body style,
- > the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



Welcome

This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Thank you for choosing a 2008.

This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of using your vehicle in all circumstances.

Key

 safety warning

 additional information

 contributes to the protection of the environment

Contents

Overview

Eco-driving

Access

Remote control key	43
Doors	48
Boot	50
Locking / unlocking from the inside	51
Alarm	52
Electric windows	54

Monitoring

Instrument panels	14
Library of indicator and warning lamps	16
Gauges and indicators	28
Touch screen	34
Trip computer	38
Distance recorders	41
Setting the date and time	42

Comfort

Front seats	56
Rear seats	58
Steering wheel adjustment	59
Mirrors	60
Ventilation	62
Heating	65
Manual air conditioning	65
Dual-zone digital air conditioning	67
Front demist - defrost	70
Rear screen demist - defrost	70

Fittings

Interior fittings	71
Boot fittings	75

Driving

Driving recommendations	79
Starting - Switching off the engine	80
Manual parking brake	82
5-speed manual gearbox	83
6-speed manual gearbox	83
5-speed electronic gearbox	84
6-speed electronic gearbox	87
Automatic gearbox	91
Automatic gearbox (EAT6)	95
Gear shift indicator	99
Stop & Start	100
Hill start assist	103
Speed limiter	104
Cruise control	106
Memorising speeds	108
Parking sensors	110
Reversing camera	112
Park Assist	113

Visibility **6**

Lighting	117
Headlamp adjustment	124
Cornering lighting	125
Wiper controls	126
Lighting dimmer	130
Courtesy lamps	131
Interior mood lighting	132
Panoramic glazed sunroof	133

Safety **7**

General safety recommendations	134
Direction indicators	135
Hazard warning lamps	135
Horn	136
Emergency or assistance call	136
Under-inflation detection	137
ESC system	140
Grip control	143
Active City Brake	145
Front seat belts	149
Airbags	152

Child safety **8**

Carrying children	156
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag	158
ISOFIX child seats	165
Child lock	169

Practical information **9**

Fuel tank	170
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	172
Running out of fuel (Diesel)	174
AdBlue® and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel)	175
Temporary puncture repair kit	183
Changing a wheel	194
Snow chains	201
Changing a bulb	202
Changing a fuse	208
12 V battery	214
Electrical energy economy mode	219
Changing a wiper blade	220
Towing	221
Towing a trailer	223
Towbar with quickly detachable towball	225
Fitting roof bars	230
Advice on care and maintenance	230
Accessories	231

Checks **10**

Bonnet	234
Petrol engines	235
Diesel engines	236
Checking levels	237
Checks	240

Technical data **11**

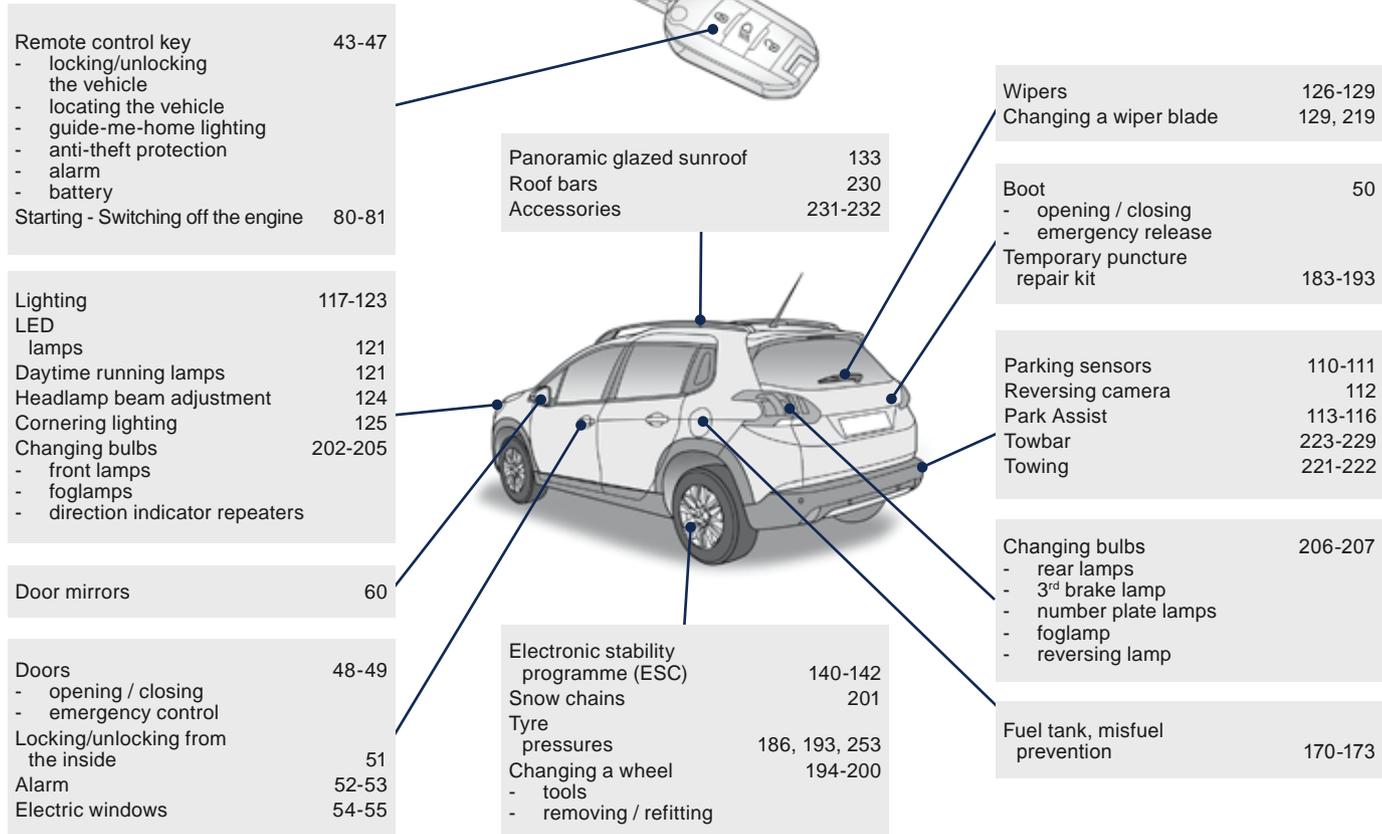
General information	242
Petrol engines	243
Petrol weights	245
Diesel engines	247
Diesel weights	249
Dimensions	252
Identification markings	253

Audio equipment and telematics

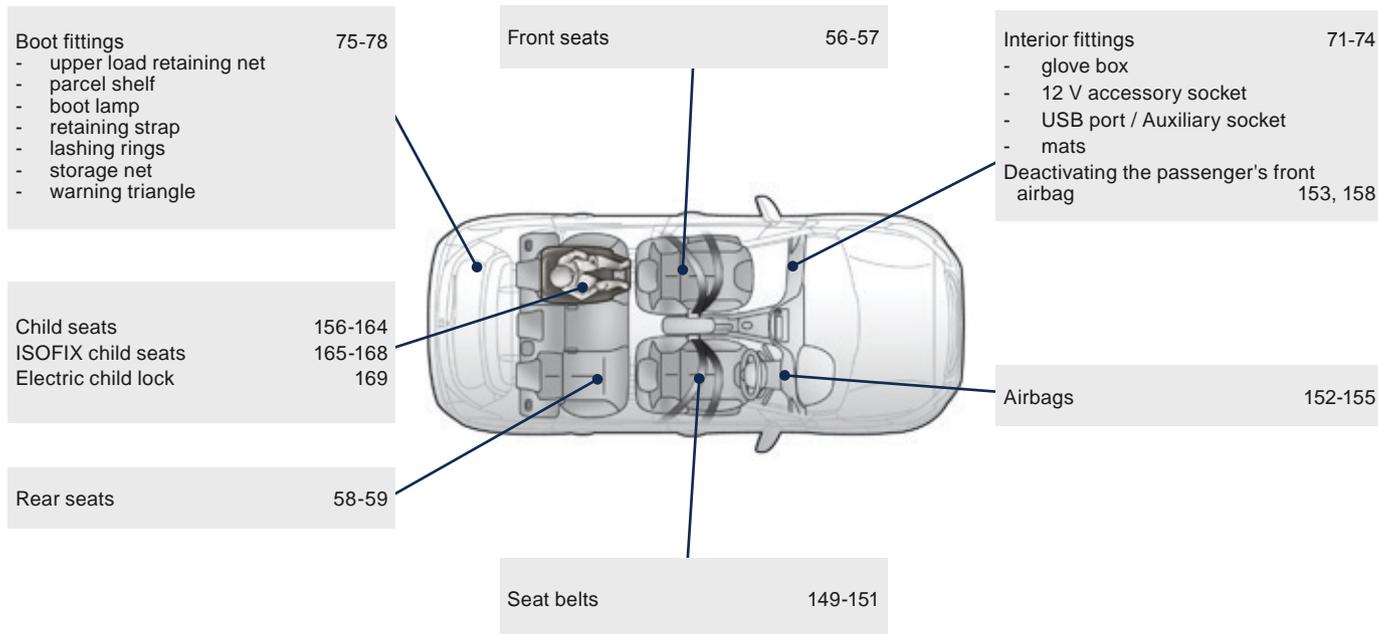
Emergency call	254
Assistance call	255
7-inch touch screen	257
Audio system / Bluetooth	327
Audio system	347

Alphabetical index

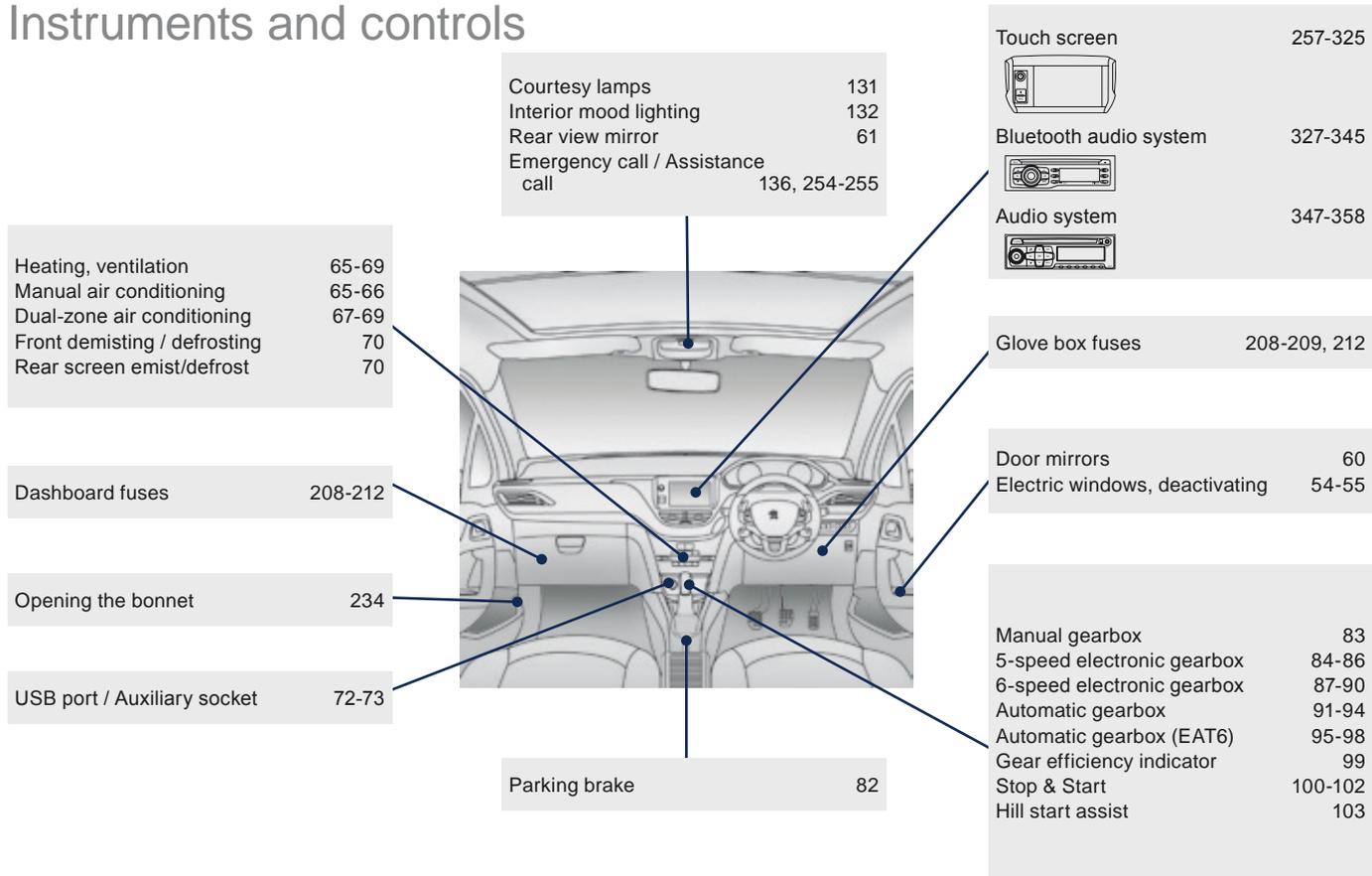
Exterior



Interior



Instruments and controls



Courtesy lamps 131
 Interior mood lighting 132
 Rear view mirror 61
 Emergency call / Assistance call 136, 254-255

Heating, ventilation 65-69
 Manual air conditioning 65-66
 Dual-zone air conditioning 67-69
 Front demisting / defrosting 70
 Rear screen emist/defrost 70

Dashboard fuses 208-212

Opening the bonnet 234

USB port / Auxiliary socket 72-73

Parking brake 82

Touch screen 257-325

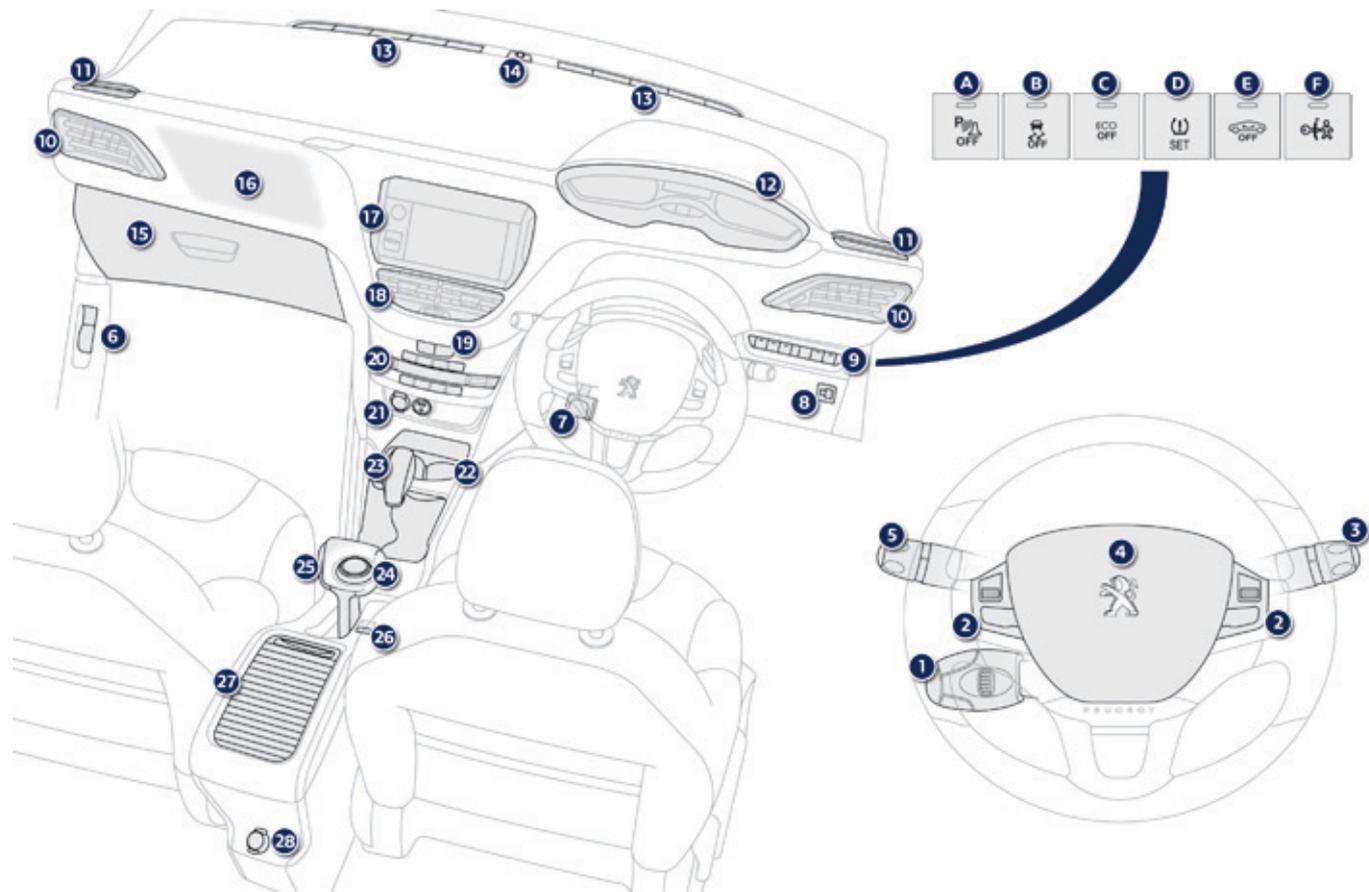
 Bluetooth audio system 327-345

 Audio system 347-358


Glove box fuses 208-209, 212

Door mirrors 60
 Electric windows, deactivating 54-55

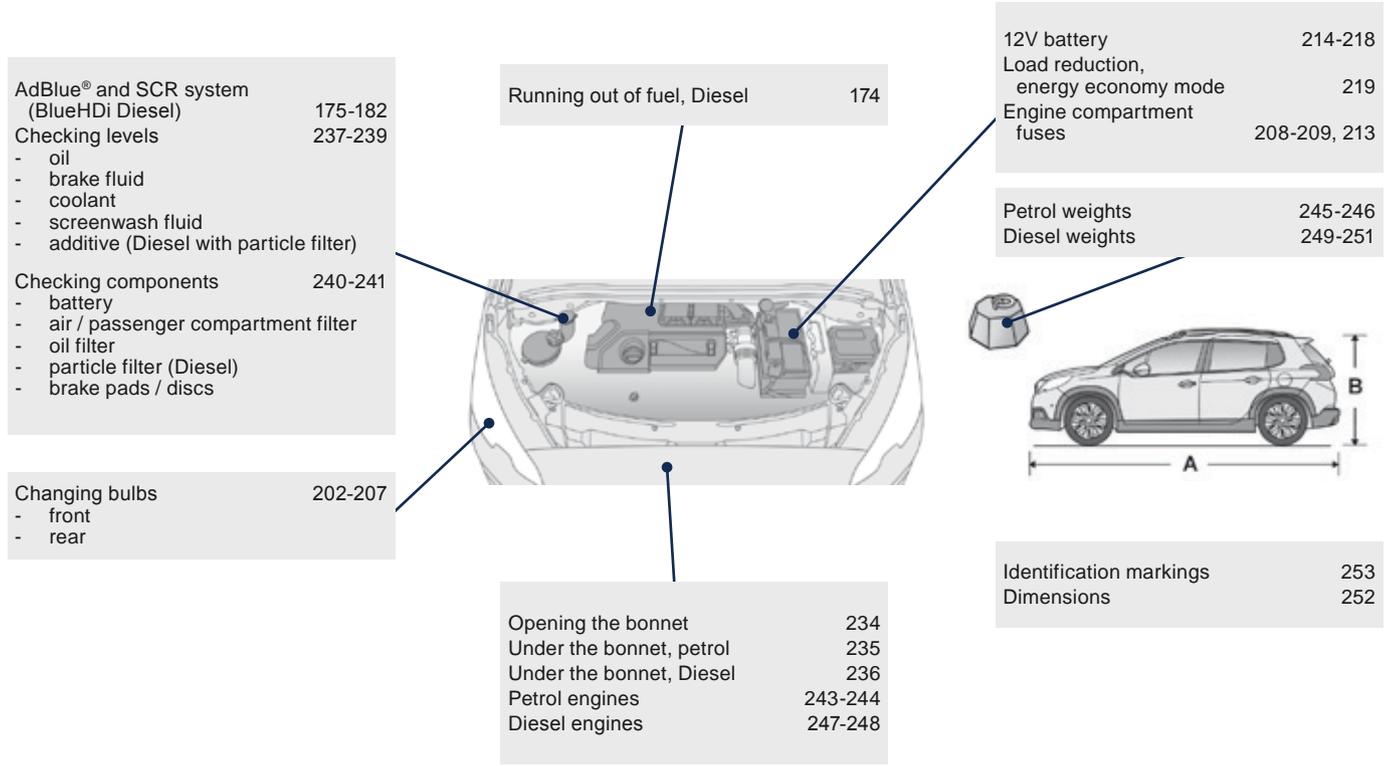
Manual gearbox 83
 5-speed electronic gearbox 84-86
 6-speed electronic gearbox 87-90
 Automatic gearbox 91-94
 Automatic gearbox (EAT6) 95-98
 Gear efficiency indicator 99
 Stop & Start 100-102
 Hill start assist 103



Dashboard / centre console

1. Cruise control / speed limiter controls.
2. Steering mounted controls for the the touch screen.
3. Wiper / screenwash / trip computer stalk.
4. Driver's front airbag.
Horn.
5. Lighting and direction indicator stalk
6. Bonnet release lever.
7. Steering wheel adjustment control.
8. Headlamp height adjustment.
9. Switch panel:
 - A. Deactivation of the rear parking sensors
or
Activation of Park Assist.
 - B. Deactivation of the DSC/ASR system.
 - C. Deactivation of the Stop & Start system.
 - D. Reinitialisation of the under-inflation
detection system (vehicle with touch
screen).
 - E. Deactivation of the volumetric alarm
monitoring.
 - F. Activation of the electric child lock.
10. Side adjustable air vents.
11. Front side window demisting/defrosting
vent.
12. Instrument panel.
13. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vent.
14. Sunshine sensor.
15. Glove box / Passenger's front airbag
deactivation.
16. Passenger's front airbag.
17. Touch screen / Audio system.
18. Central adjustable air vents.
19. Central locking and hazard warning
buttons.
20. Heating / air conditioning controls.
21. 12 V accessory socket.
USB port / auxiliary socket.
22. Open storage.
Cup holder.
23. Gear selector.
24. Grip control switch.
25. Parking brake.
26. Panoramic glazed sunroof blind opening
and closing control.
27. Closed storage compartment.
28. 12 V socket.

Maintenance - Technical data





Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.



Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference. Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

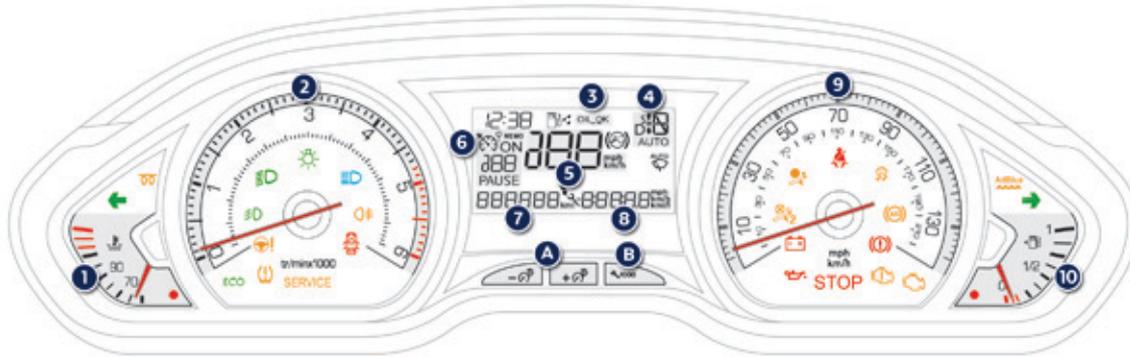
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

LCD instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
2. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min), graduation according to engine (petrol or Diesel).
3. Engine oil level indicator*.
4. Gear efficiency indicator for a manual gearbox or gear lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
This can be switched off with a long press on **B**.

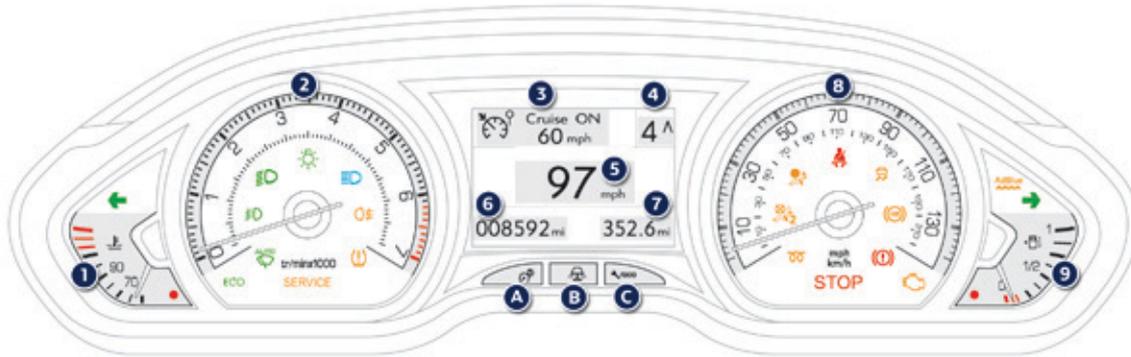
6. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
7. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
9. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
10. Fuel gauge.

Control buttons

- A. General lighting dimmer.
- B. Recalling the service information.
Resetting the function selected (service indicator or trip distance recorder).
Setting the time.
Switching the digital speedometer on and off.

* Depending on version.

Matrix instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
2. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min), graduation according to engine (petrol or Diesel).
3. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
4. Gear efficiency indicator for a manual gearbox or gear lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
5. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km). These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
7. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

Control buttons

- A. Main lighting dimmer.
- B. Instrument panel mood lighting.
- C. Recall of the service information. Reset the selected function (service indicator or trip distance recorder).

Library of indicator and warning lamps

Indicator and warning lamps

- indicator lamp informing that a system is switched on,
- warning lamp for preventive purposes or for a fault.



When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds in the instrument panel and/or instrument panel screen when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information in the table on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel or multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.

! Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting stalk has been pushed down.	When changing lane.
	Right-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting stalk has been pushed up.	
	Sidelamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	Main beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	Front foglamps	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward once to switch off the front foglamps.
	Rear foglamp	fixed.	The rear foglamp has been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk to the rear to switch off the rear foglamp.

i For more information on the lighting controls, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	fixed.	The key is at position 2 (ignition on) in the ignition switch.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about 30 seconds in very low temperatures). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Parking brake	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	Foot on the brake pedal	fixed.	The brake pedal must be pressed.	With an electronic gearbox, press the brake pedal to start the engine (lever in position N). With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, press the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake, to unlock the lever and come out of position P . If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
		flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the parking brake.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 Foot on the clutch*	fixed.	In the STOP mode of Stop & Start, changing to START mode is refused because the clutch pedal is not fully down.	You must declutch fully to allow the change to engine START mode.
 Automatic wiping	fixed.	The wiper control is pushed downwards.	Automatic front wiping is activated. To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.
 Stop & Start	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
	flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. Or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.

* Except for the matrix instrument panel.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Passenger's airbag system	fixed.	<p>The control, located in the glove box, is set to the OFF position.</p> <p>The passenger's front airbag is deactivated.</p> <p>You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the operation of the airbags (Airbag warning lamp on).</p>	<p>Set the control to the ON position to activate the passenger's front airbag.</p> <p>In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position.</p>

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the screen.

If you encounter any problems, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	STOP	fixed, associated with another warning lamp.	Major faults have occurred.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.
SERVICE	Service	fixed, associated with another warning lamp.	Major faults have occurred.	Refer to the section on this warning lamp and you must then contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with a message (if a display screen is fitted).	Faults have occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen (if a display screen is fitted) and refer to the corresponding section: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - engine oil level alert, - risk of blockage of the particle filter (Diesel), - Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter). You must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 Braking	fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid listed by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 Maximum coolant temperature	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Power steering	fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine autodiagnosis system	fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
		flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp.	A minor engine fault has been detected.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
			fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	A major engine fault has been detected.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
 + 	AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Top-up the AdBlue® as soon as possible: go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must top-up the AdBlue® to avoid a breakdown : go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must top-up the AdBlue® : go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the fluid tank



For topping-up or for more information on AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 +  + 	SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
	flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid a breakdown.
	flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Low fuel level fixed with the needle in the red zone.	There remains approximately 5 litres of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made.
	flashing with the needle in the red zone.	There remains very little fuel in the tank.	Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres . Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	Engine oil pressure fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Battery charge* fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + SERVICE	Under-inflation fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
	flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Door(s) open fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	Seat belt(s) not fastened / unfastened	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	Airbags on temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

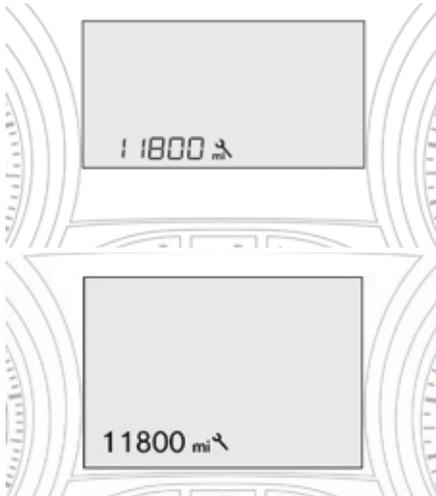
Gauges and indicators

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last reset of the indicator, according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the degree of deterioration of the engine oil is also taken into account.



More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 186 miles (300 km).

For 7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:

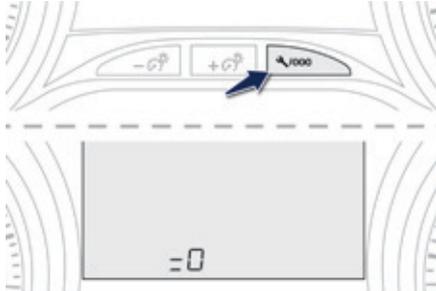


7 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**



i For BlueHDi Diesel versions, this alert is also accompanied by the fixed illumination of the Service warning lamp, when the ignition is switched on. The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions. Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, indicated in the warranty and maintenance record. For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner can also come on early, according to the degree of deterioration of the engine oil. The deterioration of the engine oil depends on the conditions in which the vehicle is used.

Resetting the service indicator



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Oil level

Dipstick

For more information on the underbonnet and the engine oil dipstick, refer to the corresponding section.

There are 2 marks on the dipstick:



- **A** = max; never exceed this level,
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the grade of oil suited to your engine.

Checking

- ☞ Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.
- ☞ Pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean cloth.
- ☞ Return the dipstick to its tube and then pull it out again to check the level against the mark.
- ☞ Return the dipstick to its tube.

Low oil level

- ☞ Identify the engine oil filler cap.
- ☞ Open the filler cap.
- ☞ Add engine oil with exceeding mark **A**.
- ☞ Fit the filler cap.

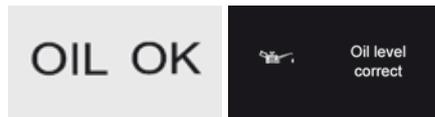
Advice

- ! Take care when working under the bonnet, as some parts of the engine can be very hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan can start at any time (even with the ignition switched off). If a level is found to be very low, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. A check of the engine oil level is only valid if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for at least 30 minutes. Oil grade: the oil used must meet the specification given in the manufacturer's servicing and warranty booklet.

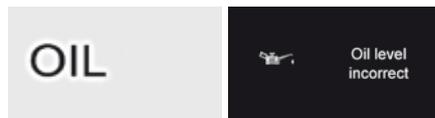
Electronic oil level indicator

The check is done for a few seconds after switching on the ignition, with a message in the display or screen (depending on version). It is only valid if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for at least 30 minutes.

i It is normal to top-up the engine oil level between services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the oil level and top-up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 km).



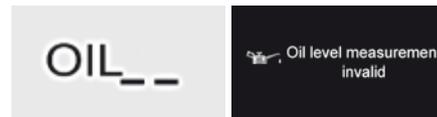
Level correct



Level incorrect

This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL" or by the display of a dedicated message in the instrument panel.

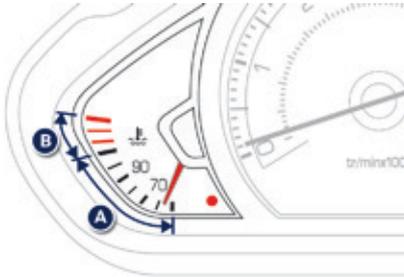
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.



Fault

This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL_ _" or by the display of a dedicated message in the instrument panel. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message in the screen.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap slightly to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

! Be aware of the risk of burns when topping up the cooling system. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the header tank).

Touch screen

It gives access to:

- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display configuration menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.

And, depending on equipment, it allows:

- the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention, with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...).

A light wipe is not enough.

The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.

This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands. Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

State of indicator lamps

Some buttons contain an indicator lamp that gives the state of the corresponding function.

Green indicator: you have switched on the corresponding function.

Orange indicator: you have switched off the corresponding function.

Principles

Press the "MENU" button for access to the different menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.



After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

1. Volume / mute.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Menus

MENU Press this button for access to the different menus.



Navigation

Depending on trim level, navigation can be not available, an option or standard.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Radio Media

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Settings

Allows configuration of the display and the system.

Gives access to interactive help for the vehicle's main systems and warning lamps.



Connected services

These services can be not available, an option or standard.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Telephone

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Driving

Allows access to the trip computer and, depending on version, the adjustment of settings for certain functions. See the corresponding section.

"Settings" menu

The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	Audio settings	Adjustment of volume, balance...
	Turn off screen	Turns the screen off.
	Color schemes	Choice of a color scheme.
	Interactive help	Access to the interactive user guide.
	System Settings	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Time/Date	Setting the date and time.
	Languages	Choice of language used.
	Screen settings	Adjustment of the screen (brightness) and display settings (scrolling of text, animations...)
	Calculator	
	Calendar	

"Driving" menu

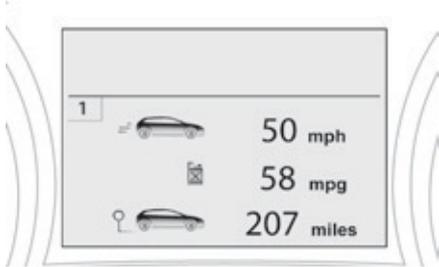
The functions accessible from this menu are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	Vehicle settings	<p>The functions with settings that can be adjusted are grouped together under these tabs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Driving assistance" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● "Automatic rear wiper in reverse" (Activation of rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see the corresponding section) - "Lighting" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● "Guide-me-home lighting" (Automatic guide me home lighting; see the corresponding section), ● "LED daytime running lamps" (see the corresponding section), ● "Mood lighting" (Interior mood lighting; see the corresponding section). <p>Select or deselect the tabs at the bottom of the screen to display the functions required.</p>
	Speed settings	Memorisation of speeds for use with the speed limiter or cruise control.
	Under-inflation initialisation	Initialisation of the under-inflation detection system.

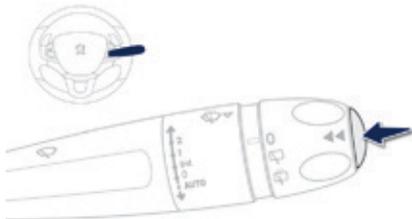
Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption...).

Instrument panel



Information display



☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the various tabs in succession.

- The current information tab with:
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter.

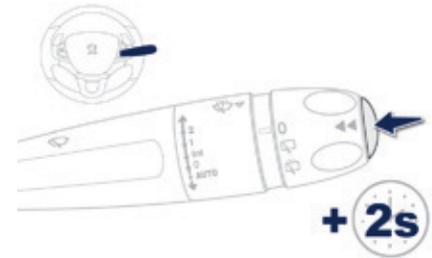
1

- Trip "1" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the first trip.

2

- Trip "2" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the second trip.

Trip reset



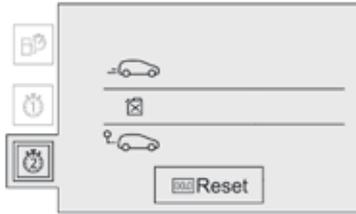
☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds or use the left hand thumb wheel of the steering mounted controls.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures, and trip "2" for monthly figures.

Touch screen

Information display



MENU

☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



☞ Select the "**Driving**" menu to display the various tabs.

☞ Select the desired tab using your finger.



- The current fuel consumption tab with:
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter.

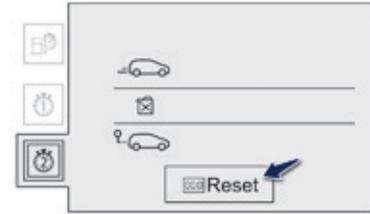


- The trip "1" tab with:
 - the distance travelled,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the average speed, for the first trip.



- The trip "2" tab with:
 - the distance travelled,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the average speed, for the second trip.

Trip reset



000

☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures, and trip "2" for monthly figures.

Trip computer

A few definitions



Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).



This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).



If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.



This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip reset.



Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip reset.



Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Distance recorders

Odometer



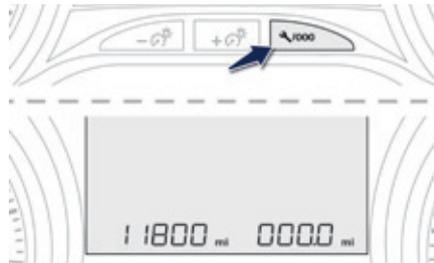
System that measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life. The total distance is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel screen.

Trip recorder



System that measures the distance travelled (daily, for example) since it was last reset by the driver. The trip recorder is displayed in zone **B** of the instrument panel screen.

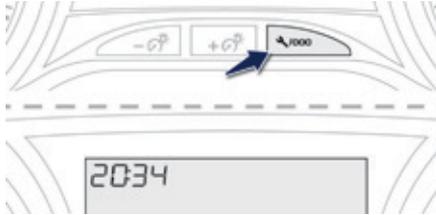
Resetting the trip recorder



With the trip mileage displayed, press this button for a few seconds.

Setting the date and time

Instrument panel



- Each press of this button moves between the following settings:
- hours,
 - minutes,
 - 12 or 24 hour format.

Touch screen



MENU

Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



Select the **"Settings"** menu.



Display the secondary page.



In the secondary page select **"Time/Date"**.

Select **"Adjust time"** or **"Adjust date"**.



Modify the setting using the virtual keypad then press on **"Confirm"**.

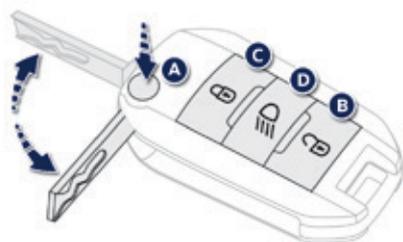


Press on **"Confirm"** to save the modifications and quit the menu.

Remote control key

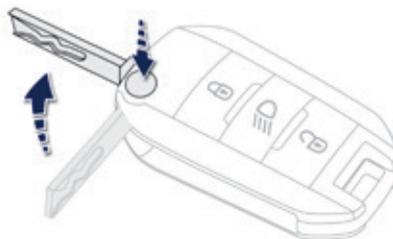
System for the central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.

It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.



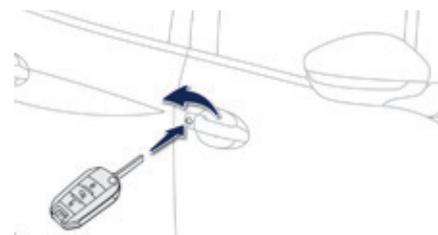
- A. Unfolding / Folding.
- B. Unlocking.
Disarming the alarm.
- C. Locking.
Locating the vehicle.
Arming the alarm.
- D. Guide-me-home lighting.

Unfolding the key



- ☞ Press this button to unfold the key.

Unlocking the vehicle Using the key



- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it.

Using the remote control

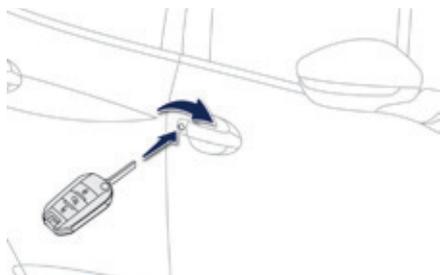


- ☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately 2 seconds. According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time. Unlocking with the key does not deactivate the alarm.

Locking the vehicle

Using the key



- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear to lock the vehicle.

Using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

Maintaining the locking action (key or remote control) automatically closes the windows.

! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your key, even for a short period.

i Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately 2 seconds. According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if an electronic key has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place. When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

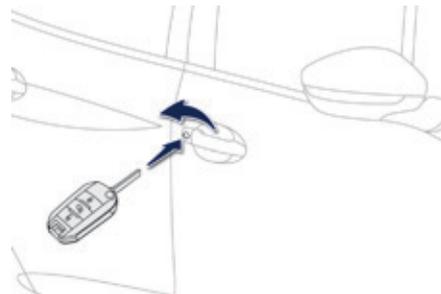
When the key is in the ignition switch, its locking/unlocking functions are deactivated.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors by the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Using the key



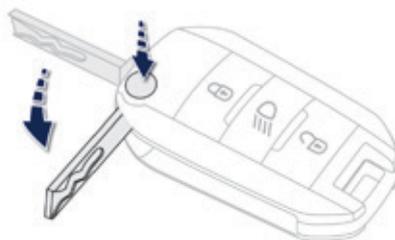
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.
- ☞ Turn the key to the rear again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Using the remote control

- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

i Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Folding the key



- ☞ Press this button before folding the key.

! If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle



- ☞ A press switches on the vehicle's lighting and flashes the direction indicators for a few seconds to help you locate your vehicle in a car park.

Guide-me-home lighting



- Make a long press on this button to operate the guide-me-home lighting (switching on the sidelamps, dipped beams and number plate lamps).

A second press before the end of the timed period cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

Electronic engine immobiliser

The original key contains a coded electronic chip. When the ignition is switched on, starting is only possible if the code is detected and recognised.

This protection against theft locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine following a break-in.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of the warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Advice



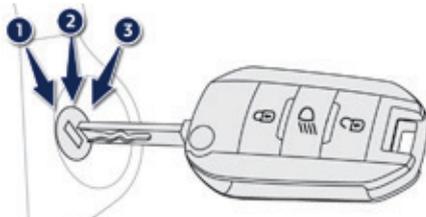
Keep away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle. It will help in finding the original code for replacement of the key.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

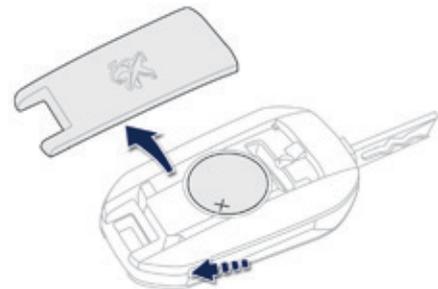


Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

SERVICE

If the battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a screwdriver in the cutout.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Extract the flat battery from its location.
- ☞ Place the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover in place.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

! Lost keys

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label. The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

Locked vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.

In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

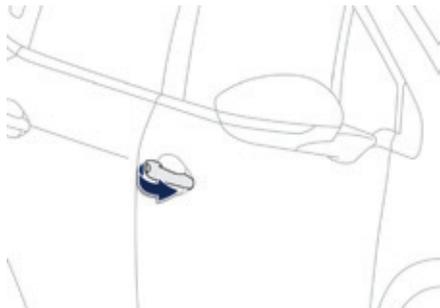
Second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Doors

Opening

From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside



- ☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i The interior opening control on a rear door does not work if the child lock is on.
For more information on the child lock, refer to the corresponding section.

Closing

- ☞ Push or pull the door to close it.

When one of the doors is not properly closed:



- **with the engine running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when driving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

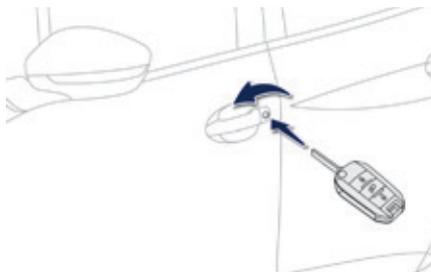
! The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Back-up control

For mechanically locking and unlocking the doors in the event of a fault with the central locking system or a battery failure.

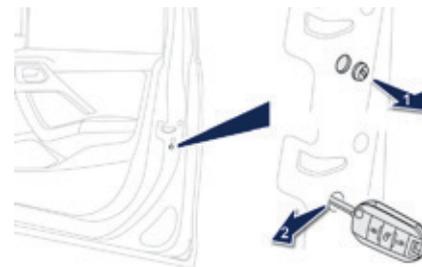
i In the event of a fault with the central locking, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so assure the complete locking of the vehicle.

Driver's door



Insert the key in the lock to lock or unlock the door.

Passenger doors



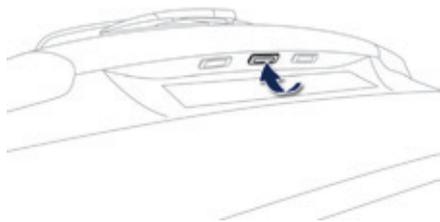
Locking

- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
- ☞ Remove the black cap located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key into the aperture without forcing, then without turning, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

Unlocking

- ☞ Pull the interior door lever.

Boot Opening



- ☞ After unlocking the boot or the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the opening control, then raise the tailgate.

Closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.
- ☞ If necessary, press down on the tailgate to fully close it.

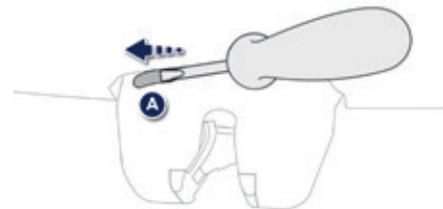
If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running,** this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

Tailgate release

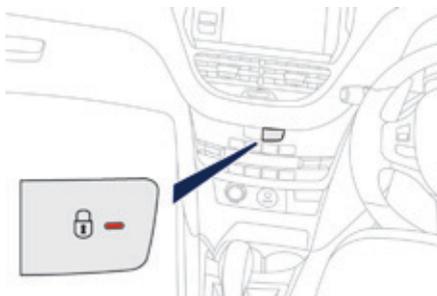
System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a central locking malfunction.



Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.

Locking / unlocking from the inside



- ☞ Press the button to lock (the indicator lamp in the button comes on) or unlock (the indicator lamp in the button goes off) the doors and boot from inside.

When one of the doors is not properly closed:



- **with the engine running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when driving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

i If one of the doors is open, the doors are not locked.

! When locking / deadlocking from outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from outside, the switch does not operate.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull the interior door lever to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, you have to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking of the doors

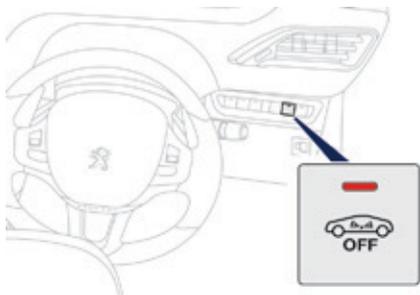
The doors can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

To turn this function on or off (on by default).

- ☞ press and hold the button until there is an audible signal and/or a message in the screen.

! Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

! Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the wires of the siren are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.



☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.



The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation



☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.



The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle.

Deactivating the interior volumetric monitoring



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within 10 seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.



The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

- i** To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring



- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.



- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.



The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.



When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Remote control fault

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

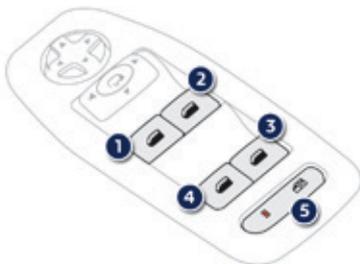
Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Electric windows



1. **Left hand front electric window.**
2. **Right hand front electric window.**
3. **Right hand rear electric window.**
4. **Left hand rear electric window.**
5. **Deactivating the rear electric window switches.**

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic one-touch operation (depending on version)

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed.

Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear window controls



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the windows of the rear doors, irrespective of their position.

With the warning lamp on, the rear switches are deactivated. With the warning lamp off, the switches are active.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch is not active during these operations:

- lower the window completely, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the switch is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window closes completely,
- press and hold the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

! Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.

When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

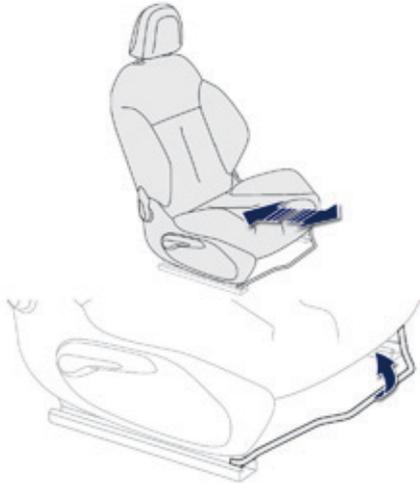
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Front seats

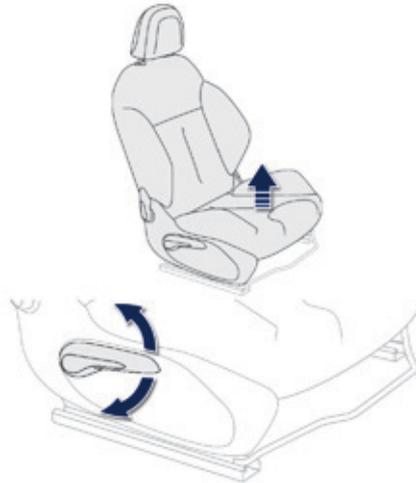
! As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be carried out when stationary.

Forwards-backwards



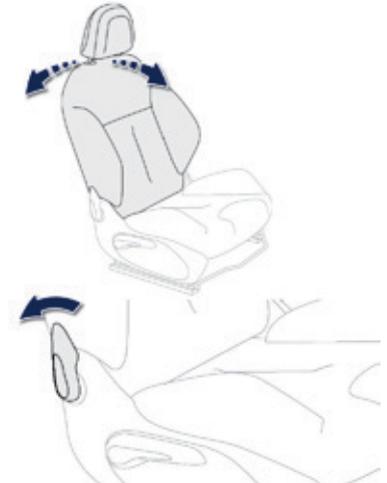
☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height



☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required, to obtain the position required.

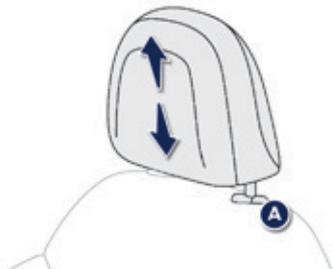
Backrest



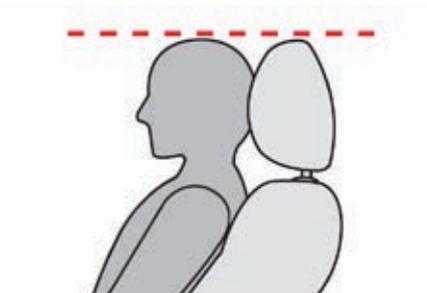
☞ Push the control rearwards.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Head restraints



- ☞ To raise the head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings, keeping them in line with the seat back.
- ☞ To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.

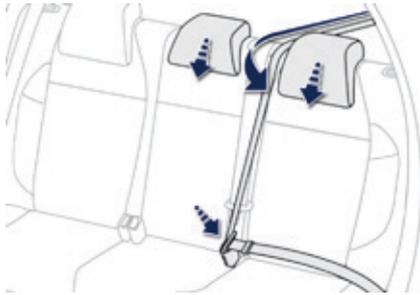


! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevent it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact. **The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Rear seats

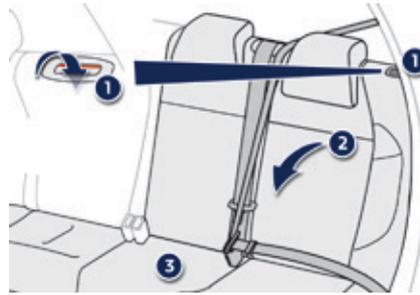
Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (left hand 2/3, right hand 1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

Folding the backrest



- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- ☞ Check that the corresponding outer seat belt is positioned correctly against the backrest and buckle it.
- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.

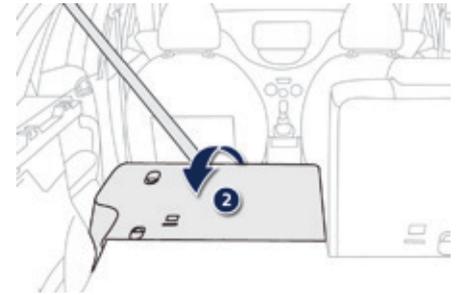
! When folding the seat, the centre seat belt should not be fastened, but laid out flat on the seat.



- ☞ Press control 1 to release the seat backrest 2.
- ☞ Fold the seat backrest 2 on to the cushion 3.

i The seat backrest alone can be folded to increase the boot loading space. The rear seat cushion does not fold.

Repositioning the seat backrest

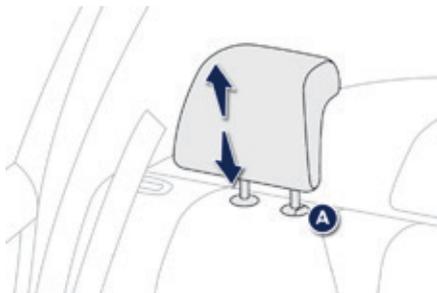


- ☞ Straighten the seat backrest 2 and secure it.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to the control 1, is no longer visible.
- ☞ Unbuckle and reposition the outer seat belt on the side of the backrest.

! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Steering wheel adjustment

Head restraints



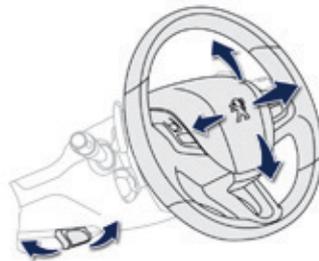
These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down). They can be removed and are interchangeable side to side.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint fully up,
- ☞ then, press the lug **A**.



Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

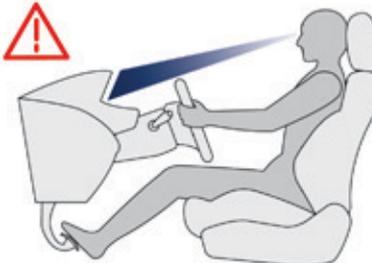


- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.



As a safety measure, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit



3

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the special ergonomics of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- height of the head restraint,
- backrest angle,
- cushion height,
- longitudinal position of the seat,
- reach and then height of the steering wheel,
- the interior and door mirrors.



Once these adjustments have been made, ensure that you can see the "head-up" instrument panel clearly from your driving position, over the reduced diameter steering wheel.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

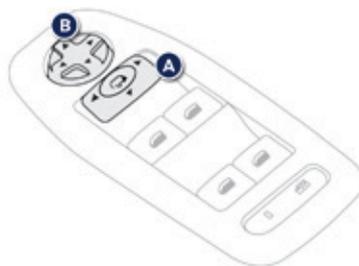
! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".

Demisting - Defrosting



Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on demisting and defrosting the rear screen, refer to the corresponding section.



Adjustment

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- Automatic: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

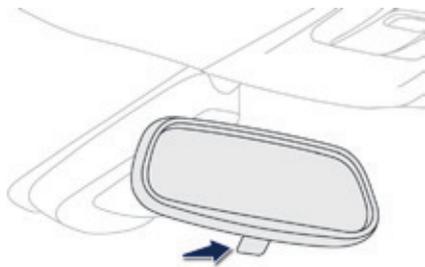
i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual model



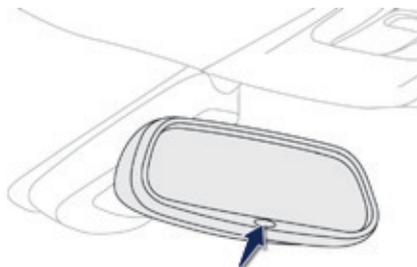
Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.



In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

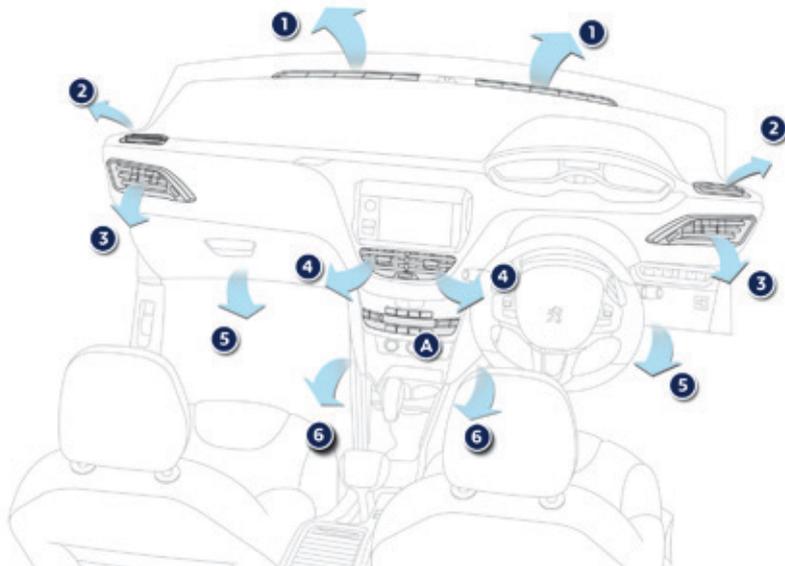
Air intake flow

The incoming air follows various paths depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.



Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
- ☞ To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
 - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
 - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
 - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
- We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the warranty and maintenance record.
 - ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

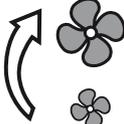
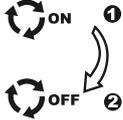
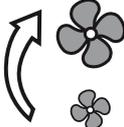
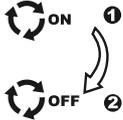
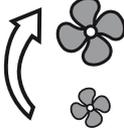
i Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☘** If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment. The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

- i** The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

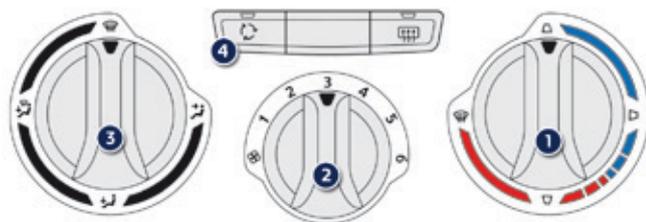
Suggested interior settings

I require...	Heating or Manual air conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Recirculation of interior air / Intake of exterior air	Temperature	Manual AC
HOT					
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: use the automatic mode in preference by pressing the "AUTO" button.

Heating / Ventilation

Manual mode



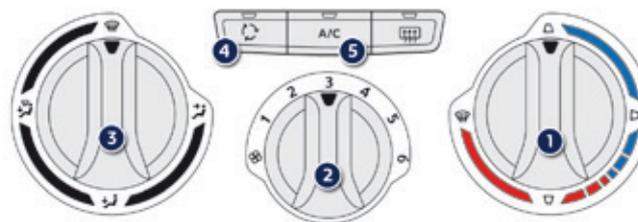
1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air intake/ air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning On / Off.

Temperature



- ☞ Turn the knob from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your wishes.

Manual air conditioning



Air flow



- ☞ Turn the knob from position 1 to position 6, to obtain the desired air flow.

i If you place the air flow control at position 0 (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be maintained. However, a slight flow of air can still be felt due to the movement of the vehicle.

Air distribution



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Centre and side air vents.



The air distribution can be modulated by placing the knob at an intermediate position.

Air intake / Air recirculation

Recirculation of the air in the vehicle isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

Return to the intake of exterior air as soon as possible to avoid the risk of deterioration of air quality and misting.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air: the indicator lamp is on.

☞ Press the button again to allow the intake of exterior air: the indicator lamp is off.

Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the "A/C" button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.



The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control is in position "0".

To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

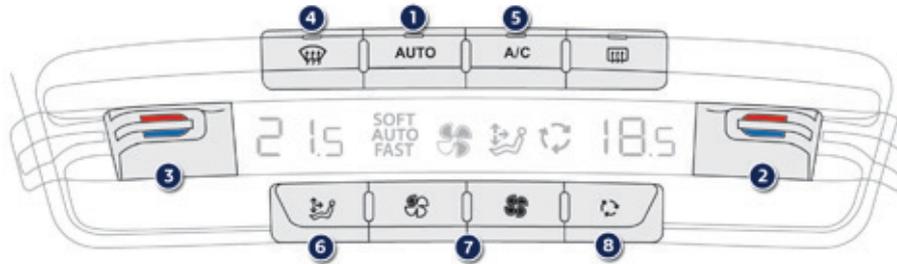
Switching off

☞ Press the "A/C" button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

AUTO mode



1. Automatic comfort programme.
2. Temperature adjustment on driver's side.
3. Temperature adjustment on passenger's side.
4. Automatic visibility programme.
5. Air conditioning On/Off.
6. Air distribution adjustment.
7. Air flow adjustment.
8. Air intake/ Air recirculation.

Automatic programme

Three modes allow the driver and front passenger to adjust the system to suit their individual requirements.

Switching on

AUTO

- ☞ Press the "AUTO" button repeatedly. The indicator lamp comes on at the first press; the mode activated appears in the digital air conditioning screen:

i When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too great a distribution of cold air.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

**SOFT
AUTO**

Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

AUTO

Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.

**AUTO
FAST**

Provides strong and effective air flow.

Switching off



- ☞ Press the "empty fan" air flow button until the fan symbol disappears.

3

Temperature

Adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their requirements. The value indicated in the screen corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.



- ☞ Push the button down (blue) to reduce the value or up (red) to increase it.

A setting around 21 enables you to obtain an optimum level of comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is usual. In addition, it is recommended that you avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

i On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to obtain the required level of comfort. The system corrects the temperature difference automatically and as quickly as possible.

Auto - Visibility programme

Switching on



- ☞ Press the "**visibility**" button for faster demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, and the air intake, flow and distribution to the windscreen and side windows to the best effect.

Switching off



- ☞ Press the "**visibility**" button again or the "**AUTO**" button, the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the indicator lamp in the "**AUTO**" button comes on.



The system reverts to the previous settings used.



- ☞ Press the "**AUTO**" button again to return to the automatic comfort programme.



For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, you can exceed the minimum value of 14 or the maximum value of 28.

- ☞ Push the button down until "**LO**" is displayed or up until "**HI**" is displayed.

Air conditioning

The air conditioning is designed to operate efficiently in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- in winter, above 3 °C, to improve demisting.

Switching on



- ☞ Press the "**A/C**" button, the associated indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow is set to off.

Switching off



- ☞ Press the "**A/C**" button again; the associated indicator lamp goes off.

i Switching off may cause some problems (humidity, misting).

Air distribution



☞ Press this button several times in succession to direct the air flow in turn towards:

- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the central and side vents,
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the footwells.

Air flow



☞ Press this **"full fan"** button to increase the air flow.

The air flow symbol (a fan) appears in the screen. It is filled in progressively in relation to the value required.



☞ Press this **"empty fan"** button to reduce the air flow.

Air intake/Air recirculation

Switching on



☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on and the air recirculation symbol is displayed.

Air recirculation prevents exterior odours and fumes from entering the passenger compartment. It is activated automatically when operating the screenwash.

Switching off

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of exterior air and prevent misting. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

! Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode (risk of misting and of deterioration of the air quality).

Manual mode

Depending on your requirements, you can make a different selection from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

When you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button goes off.

Switching the system off



☞ Press the **"empty fan"** air flow button until the fan symbol disappears and "---" appears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the air conditioning system.

The temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

! Avoid driving for too long with the system switched off (risk of misting and of deterioration of the air quality).



Pressing the **"full fan"** button reactivates the system with the settings prior to deactivation.

Front demist - defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

Manual air conditioning

Switching on

- ☞ Put the air flow, temperature and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.



- ☞ Press the "**A/C**" button for air conditioning; the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Switching off



- ☞ Press the "**A/C**" button again; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.



With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

Auto - Visibility programme

Switching on



- ☞ Press the "**visibility**" button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

Switching off



- ☞ Press the "**visibility**" button again or on "**AUTO**"; the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the indicator lamp in the "**AUTO**" button comes on.



The system reverts to the previous settings.

Rear screen demist - defrost



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

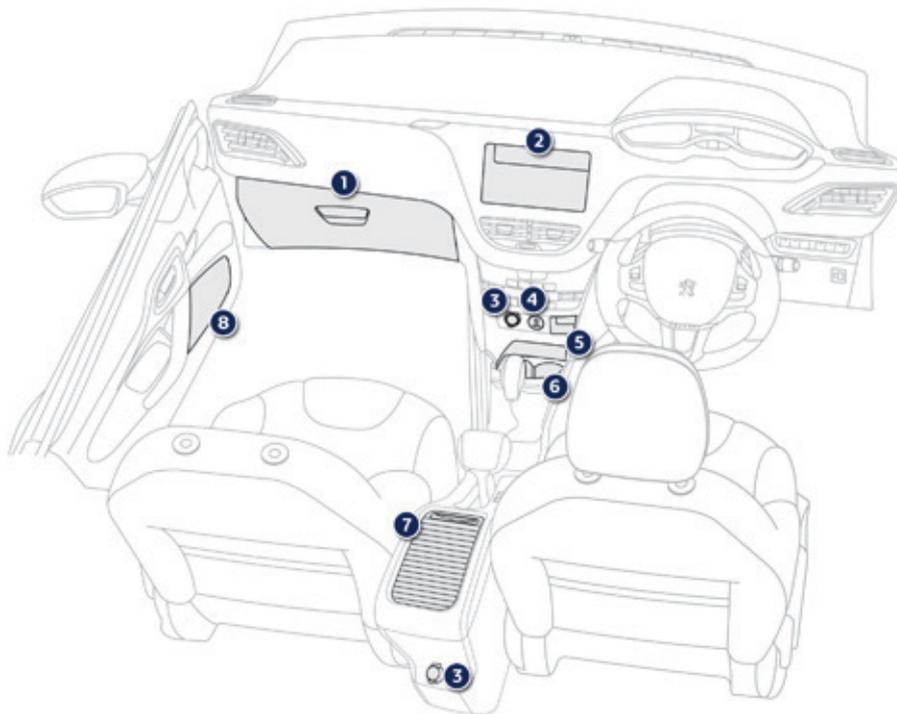
- ☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.



- ☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

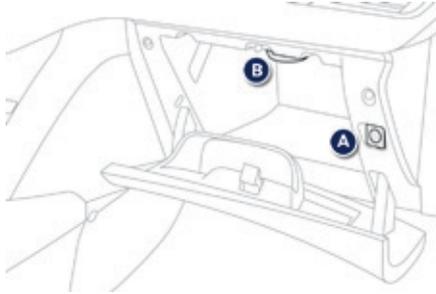
Interior fittings

1. **Glove box**
(see details on the following page)
2. **Open storage compartment** (depending on version)
3. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
(see details on the following page)
4. **USB port / Auxiliary socket**
(see details on following pages)
5. **Open storage compartments**
6. **Cup holder**
7. **Closed storage compartment or armrest**
(depending on version)
(see details on following pages)
8. **Door pockets**



4

Glove box



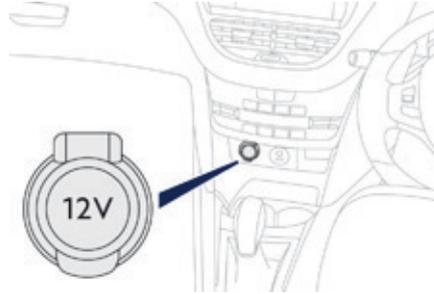
Its lid has locations for a pair of glasses...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. It houses the front passenger's airbag deactivation switch **A**.

i If the vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, it provides access to the ventilation nozzle **B**, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

i It gives access to the fusebox (for more information on changing a fuse, refer to the corresponding section).

12 V socket

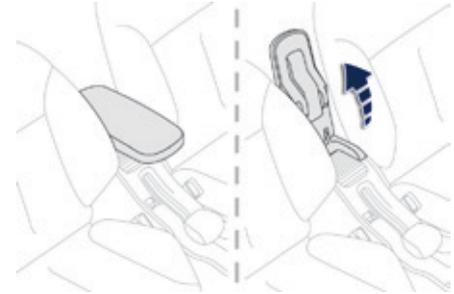


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise there is a risk of damaging your portable device).

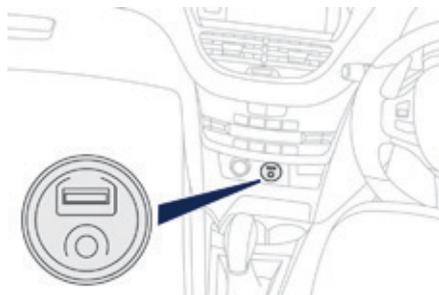
i The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Front armrest



(depending on version)
The armrest can be inclined forward for your comfort or folded fully back.

USB port / Jack auxiliary socket



This connection box, consisting of an USB port and a JACK auxiliary socket is located on the centre console.

It allows the connection of portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.

It reads the audio files which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them in the instrument panel screen.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

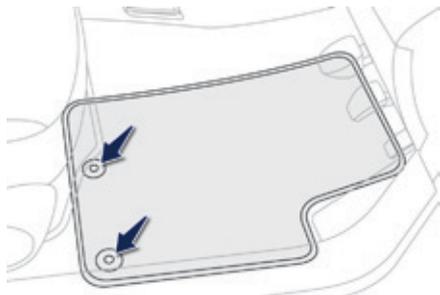
While charging, a message is displayed if the current drawn by the portable device exceeds the power rating of the vehicle's port.

i For more information on the use of this system, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Mats

Removable carpet protection.

Removal



To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

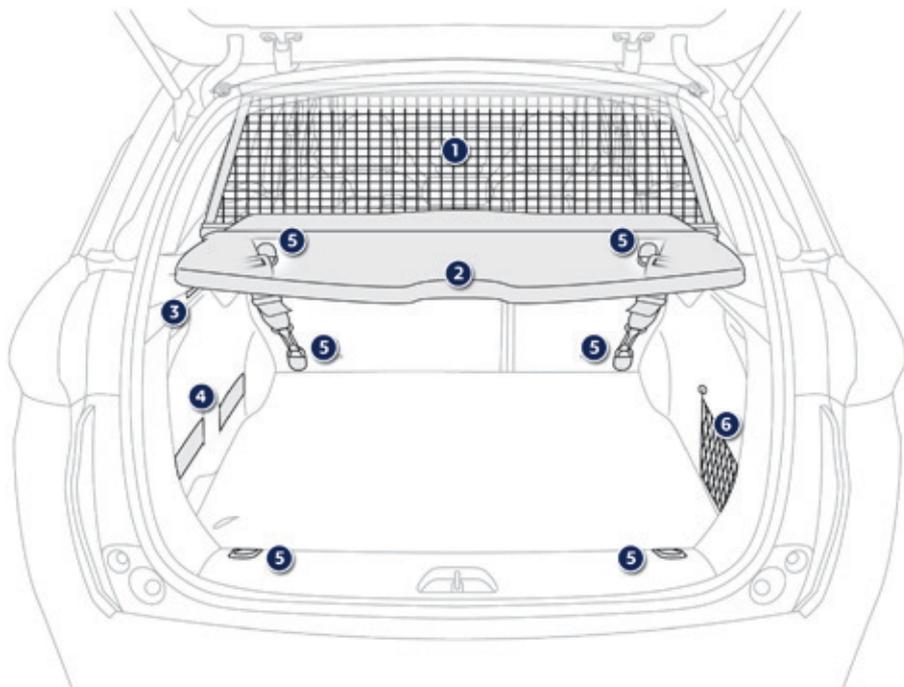
To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

- !** To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
 - never fit one mat on top of another.
- The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.

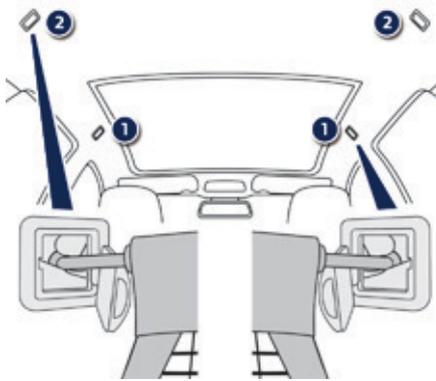
Boot fittings

1. **High load retaining net** (depending on version)
(see following page for details)
2. **Luggage cover**
(see following page for details)
3. **Boot lamp**
4. **Retaining strap**
5. **Stowing rings** (depending on version)
6. **Retaining net**



4

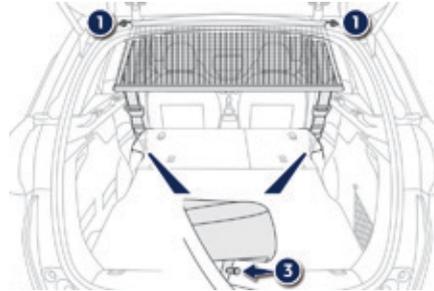
High load retaining net



Hooked onto the upper fixings and onto the lower rings or the lugs, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

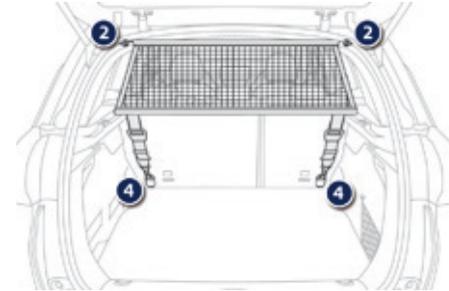
- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

i When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.



To use it in row 1:

- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings 1,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 1, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ slacken the straps fully,
- ☞ fix the snap hook of each of the straps on the corresponding lug 3, located under the bench seat cushion,
- ☞ fold the rear seats,
- ☞ tighten the straps without raising the bench seat,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.



To use it in row 2:

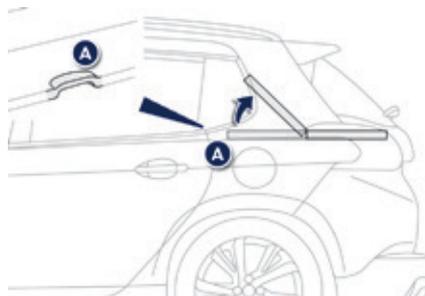
- ☞ fold or remove the load space cover,
- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings 2,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 2, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ attach the hook of each of the net's straps in the corresponding lower ring 4,
- ☞ tighten the straps,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring intended for fixing the upper strap of child seat to the Top Tether.

Rear parcel shelf



This consists of two sections which can be folded back on each other.
To store it, fold it on itself and place it at the bottom of the boot.

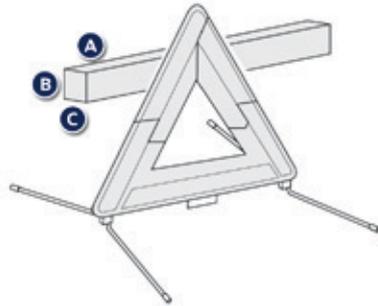


To gain access to the boot from the rear seats:
☞ raise the front section of the rear parcel shelf using the grip **A**.

Warning triangle (stowing)

The location for stowing a folded triangle or its box is under the front seat or under the boot carpet (depending on version).

! Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.



The dimensions of the triangle (once folded) or its storage box must be:

- **A:** length = **438** mm,
- **B:** height = **56** mm,
- **C:** width = **38** mm.

i To use the triangle, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

Placing the triangle in the road

☞ Place the triangle at a distance behind the vehicle, in line with the driving regulations in force in the country.

i The triangle is available as an accessory, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

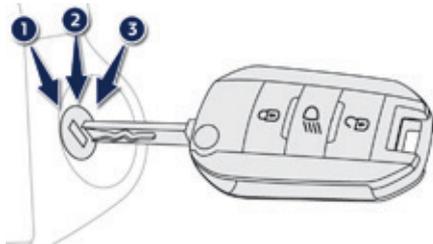
Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Risk of fire!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or run the engine over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc...

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Starting - Switching off the engine

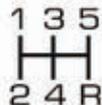
Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction. It could adversely affect the deployment of the front airbag.

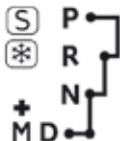
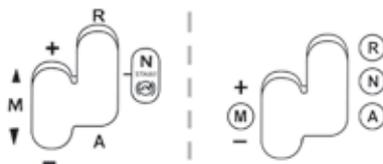
Starting



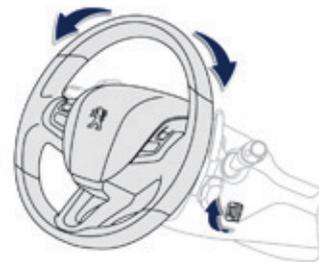
With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear selector in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.



With an **electronic gearbox**, place the gear selector at **N** then press the brake pedal firmly.



With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector at **P** or **N** then press the brake pedal firmly.



- ☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
- ☞ Release the steering column by simultaneously turning the wheel and the key.

i In some cases, you may have to apply some force to turn the steering (if the wheels are on lock against a kerb, for example).

- ☞ Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- ☞ When the engine starts, release the key.

Switching off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the wheel until the lock engages.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering wheel, it is recommended that you place the wheels in the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

! Free-wheeling

For safety reasons, do not free-wheel. Otherwise, some vehicle functions will no longer be active.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

i Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Manual parking brake

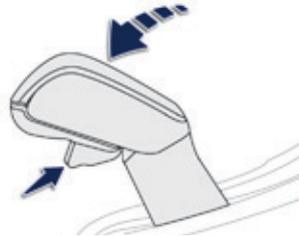
Application



- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

i On level ground, it is not necessary to make a maximum pull on the parking brake lever.

Release



- ☞ **With the foot brake applied**, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the trigger, then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.



When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Push the gear selector to the right then backwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

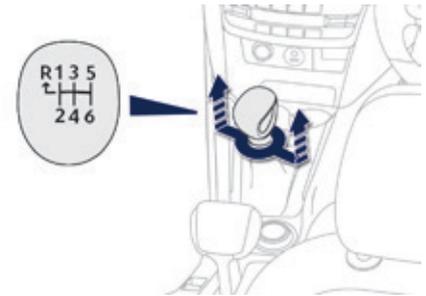
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

- ☞ Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

5-speed electronic gearbox

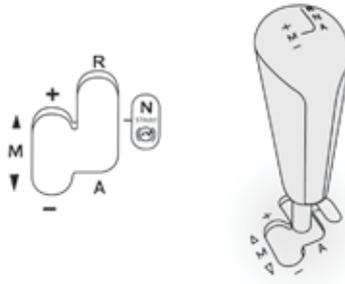
5-speed electronically controlled gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Three driving modes are offered:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox, without any action by the driver.
- **manual** mode for sequential changing of the gears by the driver, using the gear selector or the steering mounted control paddles.
- **auto sequential** mode for overtaking, for example, remaining in the automated mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

! Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear selector, as there is a risk of damaging the gearbox.

Gear selector



- R.** Reverse
 - ☞ With your foot on the brake, move the selector forwards to select this position.
- N.** Neutral.
 - ☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start the engine.
- A.** Automated mode.
 - ☞ Move the selector backwards to select this mode.
- M. + / -** Manual mode with sequential gear changing.
 - ☞ Move the selector backwards, then to the left to select this mode, then:
 - push forwards to change up a gear,
 - or push backwards to change down a gear.

Steering mounted controls



- +**. Change up paddle.
 - ☞ Press the back of the steering wheel "+" paddle to change up a gear.
- . Change down paddle.
 - ☞ Press the back of the steering wheel "-" paddle to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted paddles do not permit the selection of neutral or the engaging and disengaging of reverse gear.

Display in the instrument panel



Gear selector positions

N. Neutral
R. Reverse

1 2 3 4 5. Gears in manual mode

AUTO. This comes on when the automated mode is selected. It switches off on changing to manual mode.



☞ Place your **foot on the brake** when this warning lamp flashes (e.g.: starting the engine).

i There is an audible signal on engagement of reverse.

Moving off

- ☞ To start the engine, place the selector at position **N**.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal fully.
- ☞ Start the engine.

i If the engine does not start:



- if **N** is flashing in the instrument panel, move the selector to position **A**, then to position **N**,
- if the "**Foot on the brake**" warning is flashing in the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

- ☞ Select a mode (position **M** or **A**) or reverse (position **R**)
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Progressively take your foot off the brake pedal, then move off.



AUTO and **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel.

Stopping - Moving off on a slope

When stopping on a slope, do not use the accelerator to immobilise the vehicle; apply the parking brake.

i When moving off on a slope, accelerate gradually while releasing the parking brake.

Manual mode

- ☞ After starting the vehicle, select position **M** to change to manual mode.



AUTO disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

The gear change commands are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

When driving at low speed, on approaching a stop sign or traffic lights for example, the gearbox changes down to first gear automatically.

Automated mode

- ☞ Following use of the sequential mode, select position **A** to return to the automated mode.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear for:

- optimisation of fuel consumption,
- the driving style,
- the road conditions,
- the vehicle load.

i For best acceleration, when overtaking another vehicle for example, press the accelerator pedal firmly to pass the point of resistance.

"Auto sequential" mode

In the automated mode, you can resume control temporarily at any time using the steering mounted control paddles.

The use of these paddles permits manual selection of the gears in situations which require a more rapid change-down than in the automated mode (arrival at a roundabout, leaving a car park with a steep gradient, overtaking...).

The gearbox engages the required gear if the engine speed permits. **AUTO** remains displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few moments, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can change to position **N** to be in neutral.

In this case, you must **apply the parking brake** to immobilise the vehicle.

Reinitialisation

Following disconnection of the battery, the gearbox must be reinitialised.

☞ Switch on the ignition.



AUTO and - appear in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Select position **N**.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Wait approximately 30 seconds until **N** or a gear appears in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal.

The gearbox is operational again.

Operating fault

SERVICE

With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and

AUTO flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a gearbox fault.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! You must press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.
- Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.
- Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- In all cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

6-speed electronic gearbox

6-speed electronically controlled gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

There are two driving modes:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** mode for sequential gear changing by the driver.

In automated mode, it remains possible to change gear manually by using the steering mounted control paddles when required, when overtaking, for example.

Gear selector



- R. Reverse**
 - ☞ With your foot on the brake, lift the selector and push forwards.
- N. Neutral.**
 - ☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.
- A. Automated mode.**
 - ☞ Move the selector backwards to select this mode.
- M. + / -.** Manual mode with sequential gear changing.
 - ☞ Move the selector to the left to select this mode, then:
 - push it forwards to change up,
 - or pull it backwards to change down.

Steering mounted control paddles



- +** Change up paddle.
 - ☞ Press the back of the "+" steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.
- Change down paddle.
 - ☞ Press the back of the "-" steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral, or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

! Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear selector as there is a risk of damaging the gearbox.

Display in the instrument panel



Gear selector positions

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1 2 3 4 5 6. Gears in manual mode

AUTO. This comes on when the automated mode is selected. It switches off on changing to manual mode.



- ☞ Place your **foot on the brake** when this warning lamp is flashing (for example, when starting the engine).

i Engagement of reverse gear is accompanied by an audible signal.

Moving off

- ☞ To start the engine, place the selector at position **N**.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.
- ☞ Start the engine.

i If the engine does not start:



- if **N** is flashing in the instrument panel, move the selector to position **A**, then to position **N**,
- if the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed, press the brake pedal firmly.

- ☞ Select a mode (position **A** - automated or **M** - manual) or reverse (position **R**).
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal, then accelerate.

AUTO and **1, 1** or **R** appears in the instrument panel screen.

Automated mode

- ☞ After starting the vehicle, select position **A** for enter automated mode.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox is then operating in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear, depending on the:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road.

i For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

Manual gear changing



This selective gear change mode enables you to overtake, for example, while still remaining in automatic mode.

- Operate the **+** or **-** steering mounted control paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits. **AUTO** is still displayed in the instrument panel.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Manual mode

- When the vehicle has moved off, select position **M** to change to manual mode.
- Pull the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- Push the selector towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.



The gears engaged appear successively in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to permit acceleration in the correct gear.

i At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. A warning lamp appears in the instrument panel screen.

! On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles. Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving. Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear selector at neutral **N**. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear selector is at neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault

SERVICE

With the ignition on, the flashing of this warning lamp and the flashing of **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, indicates a malfunction of the gearbox. Have it checked by PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop.

! You must press the brake pedal firmly when starting the engine. Whatever the circumstances, you must manually apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

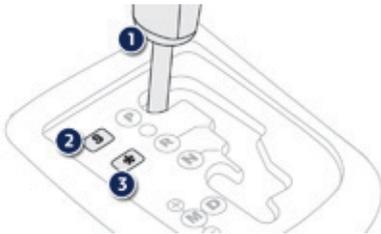
Automatic gearbox

4-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are available:

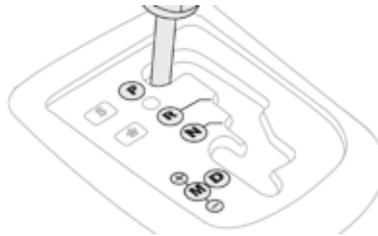
- **automatic** operation with electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to make driving easier when grip is poor.
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



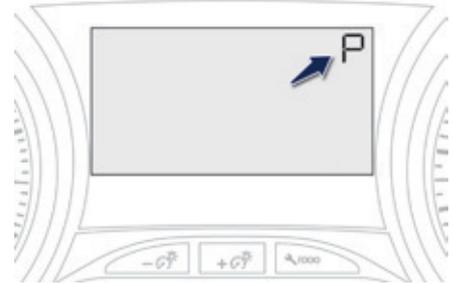
1. Gear selector knob.
2. Button "**S**" (**sport**).
3. Button "*****" (**snow**).

Gear selector positions



- P.** Park.
 - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
 - Starting the engine.
- R.** Reverse.
 - Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N.** Neutral.
 - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
 - Starting the engine.
- D.** Automatic operation.
- M + / -.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the 4 gears.
 - ☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.
 - or
 - ☞ Pull backwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P.** Park
- R.** Reverse
- N.** Neutral
- D.** Drive (Automatic driving)
- S.** **Sport** programme
- *** **Snow** programme
- 1 2 3 4.** Gears engaged during manual operation
- . Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off



- ☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.

- ☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by the display of an warning message.

- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle then moves off.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then select position **D** to accelerate.

i If the ambient temperature is below -23°C , the engine should be left at idle for 4 minutes, to ensure the correct operation and life of the engine and gearbox.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

- ☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the 4 gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button "S", after starting the engine. The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine. The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads. This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to standard automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the four gears.
- ☞ Push the selector towards the + sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the selector towards the - sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

i If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears in the screen.

- ☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Operating fault

SERVICE When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

! There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the movement of the selector from the **P** position to another position when the battery is flat.

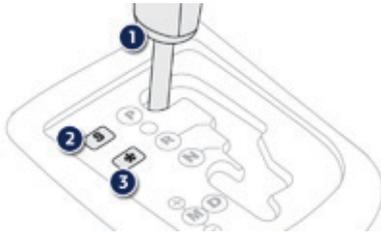
To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam...), put the selector in the **N** position and apply the parking brake.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing. Two driving modes are available:

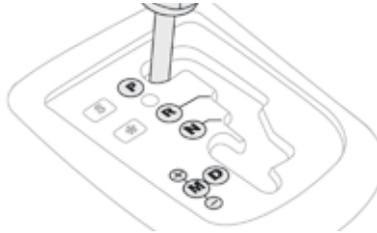
- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with the **sport** programme for a more dynamic driving style or the **snow** programme to improve driving on slippery surfaces,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector gate



1. Gear selector.
2. "S" (**sport**) button.
3. "❄" (**snow**) button.

Gear selector positions



- P.** Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
 - Starting the engine.
- R.** Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N.** Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
 - Starting the engine.
- D.** Automatic operation.
- M + / -.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push forward to change up through the gears.
 - or
 - ☞ Pull backward to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P.** Park
- R.** Reverse
- N.** Neutral
- D.** Drive (Automatic operation)
- S.** Sport programme.
- ❄.** Snow programme.
- 1 2 3 4 5 6.** Gears engaged during manual operation
- .** Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off



- ☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.

- ☞ Start the engine.

If these conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by the display of an warning message.

- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

- ! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then select position **D** before accelerating.

i If the ambient temperature is below -23°C , the engine should be left at idle for four minutes, to ensure the correct operation and life of the engine and gearbox.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

As a safety measure, if you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change up.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Reverse

When selecting reverse **R** with the ignition on, the rear parking sensors are activated.

For more information, refer to the "Rear parking sensors" section.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes complete the automatic operation, for use in particular circumstances.

"S" sport programme

☞ Press the "**S**" button, once the engine has started.

The gearbox automatically allows a more dynamic driving style.



S appears in the instrument panel.

☼ Snow programme

☞ Press the "☼" button, once the engine has started.

The gearbox adapts itself to driving on slippery roads.

This programme helps moving off and improves traction when grip is poor.



☼ appears in the instrument panel.



At any time, press the button selected again to leave the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the + sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Move the selector towards the - sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed. It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox engages first gear automatically.

i The sport and snow programmes are not available when operating manually.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

- i** If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears in the screen.
 - ☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Operating fault

SERVICE

With the ignition on, illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox fault. In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the movement of the selector from the **P** position to another position when the battery is discharged.



To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam...), put the selector in the **N** position and apply the parking brake.

Gear shift indicator

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

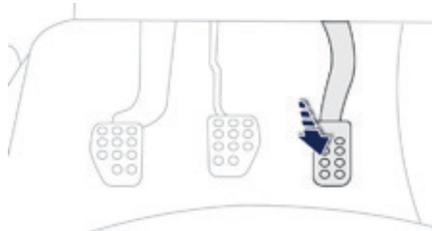
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system. This function cannot be deactivated.

i With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

Example:



- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

i On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

i The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

-  The "ECO" warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:
- for **e-HDi Diesel** engines:
 - **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you place the gear selector into neutral, and you release the clutch pedal,
 - **with an electronic gearbox**, at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector into position **N**,
 - for **e-VTI and e-THP petrol** engines and **BlueHdi Diesel** engines, with the vehicle stationary.



A time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

 For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. Stop & Start does not affect the vehicle's systems, such as for example, braking, power steering...

 Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting has been selected,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



The "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



The "ECO" warning lamp goes off and the engine starts:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic / automatic gearbox:**
 - gear selector in position **A / D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
 - or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector into position **A / D** or **M**,
 - or when you engage reverse gear.

With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if you engage a gear without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a message is displayed asking you to fully depress the clutch pedal so that the engine can restart.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

For reasons of safety and for your comfort, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.



The "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Manual deactivation



5

In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be preferable to deactivate the Stop & Start system. The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is on.

At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.



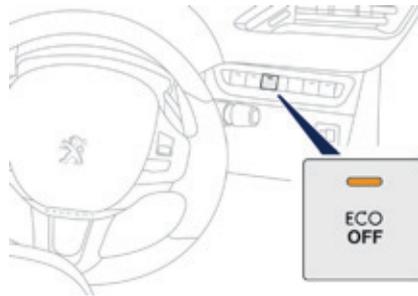
If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Manual reactivation

Press the "ECO OFF" switch again. The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off, accompanied by a message in the screen.

i The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, the "ECO OFF" switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.



! The Stop & Start requires the use of a 12 V battery of special specification and technology. All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on the 12 V battery, refer to the corresponding section.

Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

Driving on flooded roads

Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more advice on driving, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Hill start assist

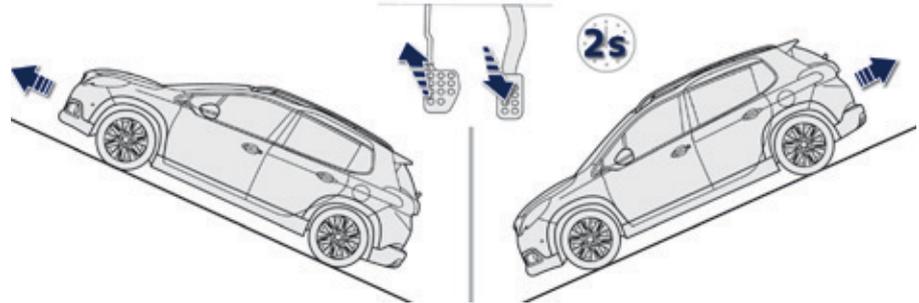
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- when certain conditions of gradient are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:

- if you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox*,
- if you are in position **A** or **M** with an electronic gearbox,
- if you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



SERVICE

If a fault occurs with the system, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase. If you need to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on (not flashing) in the instrument panel.

* Depending on version.

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver. When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal in the normal manner no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: the programmed speed must be at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly. To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed.

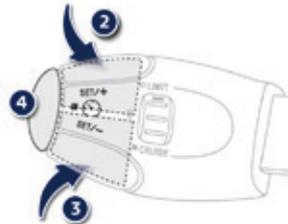
The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls

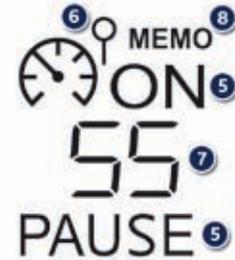


1. Selection of speed limiter mode.



2. Increase the programmed value.
3. Decrease the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Off.

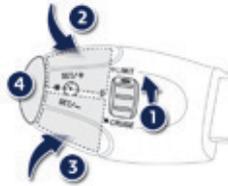
Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on/off indication.
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
7. Programmed speed value.
8. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

Programming



- ☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (PAUSE).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

- ☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3**.
You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:
 - by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
 - by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
 - in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (PAUSE).
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.



Leaving limiter mode

- ☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault



In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h), as well as the engagement of:

- fourth gear on a manual gearbox,
- second gear on an electronic or automatic gearbox, in manual sequential mode,
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or position **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the electronic stability system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

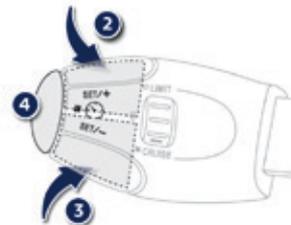
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls

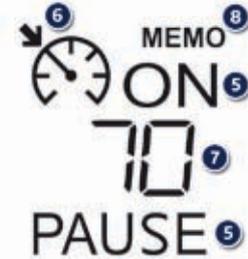


1. Selection of cruise control mode.



2. Increase the programmed value.
3. Decrease the programmed value.
4. Cruise control Off / Resume.

Displays in the instrument panel

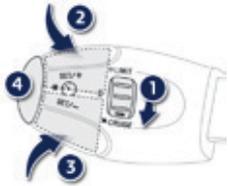


The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control stopped/resumed indication.
6. Cruise control mode selection indication.
7. Programmed speed value.
8. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

i The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Programming



- ☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the "CRUISE" position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (PAUSE).
- ☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3**.

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

- ☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms that it has been switched off (PAUSE).
- ☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Leaving cruise control mode

- ☞ Turn thumb wheel **1** to the "0" position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.



Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic. On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

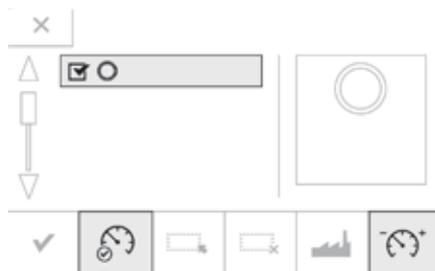
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Memorising speeds

This memorisation of speeds applies to both the speed limiter (limit speed) and the cruise control (running speed).

You can memorise up to 5 speed settings in the system. By default, a few speeds are already memorised.

Memorisation



MENU

Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



Select the "**Driving**" menu.

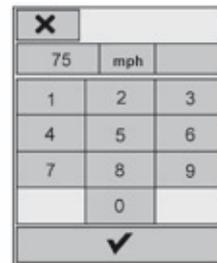


Display the secondary page.



In the secondary page, select "**Speed settings**".

Choose the speed that you want to modify, then press on "**Modify**".



Enter the new value using the virtual keypad, then press on "**Confirm**".



Press on "**Confirm**" to save the modifications and quit the menu.



As a safety measure, the driver should carry out these operations when stationary.



Use this button to select all speeds.

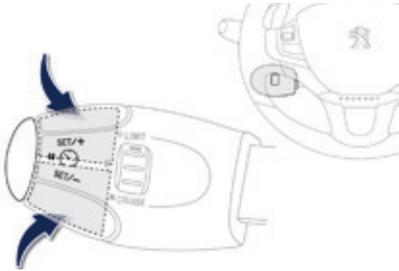


Use this button to deselect all speeds.



This button restores the factory settings.

Selection

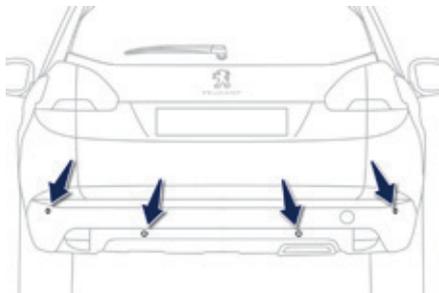


To select a memorised speed:

- ☞ press and hold button "+" or "-"; the system stops at the closest memorised speed,
- ☞ press and hold button "+" or "-" again to select another memorised speed.

A reminder of the speed and the state of the system (on / off) is displayed in the instrument panel.

Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper. Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.



This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.



Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.



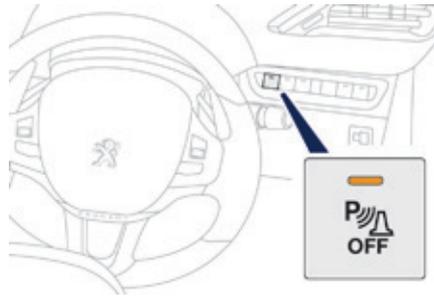
Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors*

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.



Deactivation / Activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

* Available only with the Park Assist system.

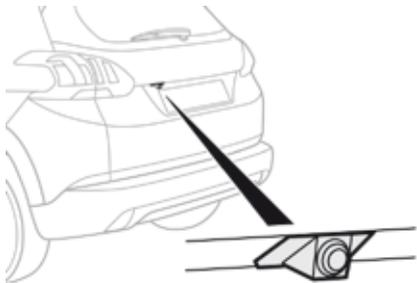
Operating fault

SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep). Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

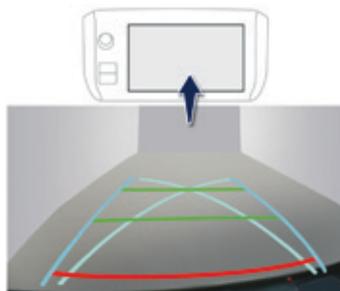
Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. Depending on version, the image is displayed in the touch screen or the instrument panel.

The reversing camera function may be completed with parking sensors.

i The reversing camera cannot in any circumstances be a substitute for vigilance on the part of the driver.



! **High pressure jet washing**
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the camera lens.

The superimposed representation of guide lines helps with the manoeuvre. They are represented by lines marked "on the ground" and do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (for example: other vehicles, ...).

i Some deformation of the image is normal. It is normal to be able to see part of the number plate at the bottom of the screen.

The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle (the difference corresponds to the width of your vehicle without the mirrors). The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper. The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper. The turquoise blue curves represent the maximum turning circle.

i Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Park Assist

The system detects a parking space and then provides assistance with the parallel parking manoeuvres.

It controls the steering and provides visual and audible information to the driver.

The driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and the clutch in the case of a manual gearbox.

! The Park Assist system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear during the manoeuvre. In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

! During a manoeuvre the steering wheel turns quickly: do not hold the steering wheel, do not place your hand between the spokes of the steering wheel and take care with loose and bulky clothing, scarves, handbags... There is a risk of injury.

i For entry into a parking space (parallel parking) the system does not detect spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle. This "parking assistance" system is activated automatically during manoeuvres; it is therefore possible that a symbol comes on in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal, without affecting the manoeuvre.

i Changing tyre sizes (out-size tyres, winter tyres, ...) can interfere with the correct operation of the parking assistance system.

i The selection of the type of manoeuvre (entering or exiting a parallel parking space) prevents a change to STOP mode of Stop & Start. In STOP mode, this selection restarts the engine.

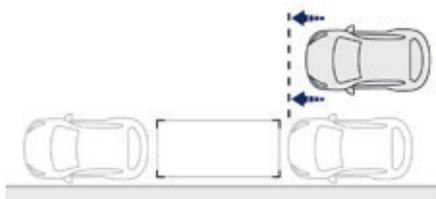
The driver can take back control of the steering at any time by grasping the wheel.



The system provides assistance in entering and exiting a parking space when parallel parking.

Entering a parallel parking space

- When you have identified a free space, reduce the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h).

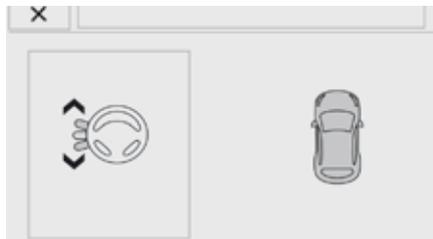


- Position your vehicle before this space.



To activate the Park Assist system:

- Press this control to activate the system. The indicator lamp in the control remains off.
- A message is displayed in the screen.
- Select the enter parking space manoeuvre. The indicator lamp in the control comes on.



- Operate the direction indicator on the parking side.



- Move forwards alongside the parking space at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) to measure it, keeping at a distance of between 0.5 and 1.5 metres from the row of parked vehicles.

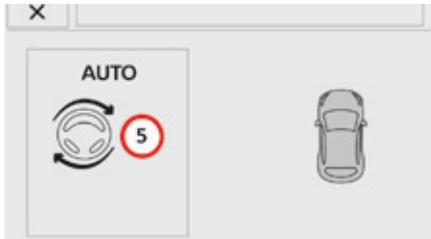
Once measurement is complete, if the space is large enough a message indicates that parking is possible.



- Move your vehicle forward until a new message is displayed.



- Select reverse and release the steering wheel.



The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 5 mph (8 km/h), continue the manoeuvres following the information given by the "parking assistance" system, until the end of manoeuvre message is displayed. The indicator lamp in the control goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.



The driver takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

Exit from a parallel parking space

- When you want to exit from a parallel parking space, start the engine.



With the vehicle stationary, to activate the Park Assist system:

- Press this control. The indicator lamp in the control remains off.
- A message is displayed in the screen.
 - Select the parking space manoeuvre. The indicator lamp in the control comes on.
 - Operate the direction indicator on the exit from parking side. The direction indicator warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel throughout the manoeuvre, whatever the position of the stalk.
 - Select a forward or reverse gear then release the steering wheel.



The assisted exit from parking manoeuvre is in progress.

Without exceeding 5 mph (8 km/h), continue the manoeuvres following the information given by the "parking assistance" system, until the end of manoeuvre message is displayed.

The manoeuvre is complete once the front wheels of the vehicle are out of the parking space. The indicator lamp in the control goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.



The driver takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically:

- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is started within 5 minutes of selection of the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the road wheel anti-spin regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- if the driver presses the Park Assist control,
- if correct positioning of the vehicle is not possible (too many manoeuvres needed to insert or extract the vehicle),
- if the driver's door is open,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

! If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the drive should reactivate it manually to repeat the measurement.

A message is displayed in the screen.



The driver then takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

Switching off

The system is switched off automatically:

- when towing a trailer,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 42 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system of for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults

SERVICE In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep). The indicator lamp in the control flashes for a few seconds. If the problem occurs while using the system, the indicator lamp goes off.

STOP  In the event of a fault with the power steering, these warning lamps come on in the instrument panel. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space. Anything projecting beyond the envelope of the vehicle (long or wide load) is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

i In bad weather and in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow. In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lighting

Main lighting

The vehicle has various exterior lamps:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to meet particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to better signal the presence of the vehicle in foggy conditions,
- front foglamps with cornering lighting,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day,
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting for leaving and entering the vehicle.

Automatic lighting functions

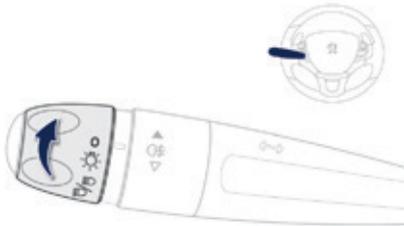
Various automatic lighting functions are also available depending on options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- cornering lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- daytime running lamps,
- automatic illumination of headlamps.

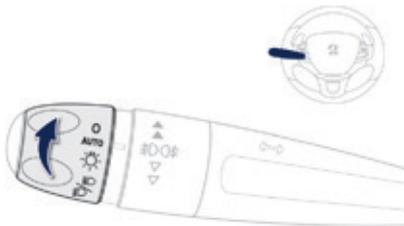
i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Selection ring for main lighting mode

Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

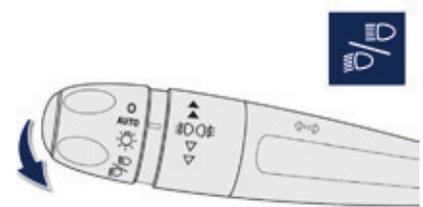


Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting

-  Lighting off (ignition off) / Front daytime running lamps (engine running).
-  Automatic illumination of headlamps.
-  Sidelamps only.
-  Dipped or main beam headlamps.



Dipping the headlamps

Pull the stalk to switch the lighting between dipped / main beam headlamps.

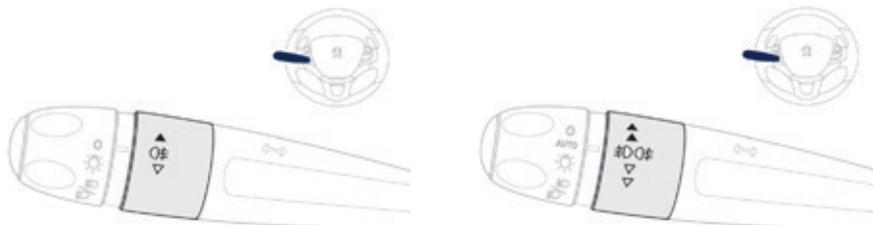
In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms the lighting switched on.

Foglamps selection ring

The foglamps operate with dipped and main beam headlamps.



6

Rear foglamp only

- ☞ To switch it on, turn the ring forwards. When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.
- ☞ To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.

Front foglamps and rear foglamp

- Rotate and release the ring:
- ☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
 - ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,
 - ☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamp,
 - ☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

- When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.
- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow. In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

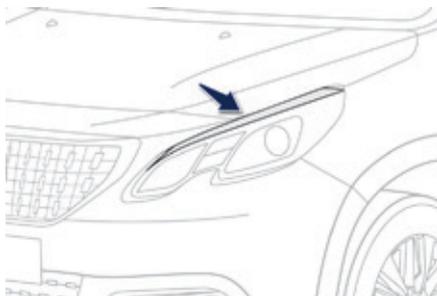
i **Switching off the lamps when the ignition is switched off**

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if guide-me-home lighting is activated.

i **Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off**

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "0" position - lamps off, then to the desired position. On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on. The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of 30 minutes to avoid discharging the battery.

LED lamps



They come on when the engine is started. Depending on the country of sale, they are used for:

- daytime running lamps* in day mode and sidelamps in night mode (they are brighter when daytime running lamps),
- or
- sidelamps in day and night mode.

* Function that can be set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

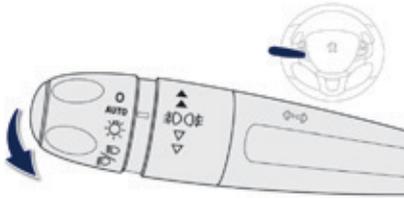
- in countries where it is imposed by regulations, by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps; this function cannot be deactivated.
- for other countries where it is provided, by the use of dedicated lamps (LEDs); this function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The lighting control stalk must be placed in the "0" or "AUTO" (day mode) position. Deactivation of the daytime running lamps is effective after operation of the lighting control stalk or after the next engine start; activation is effective immediately.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, touch screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



On

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

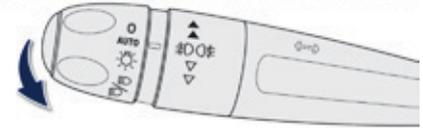


Manual guide-me-home lighting is also available from the remote control lighting button (refer to the corresponding section).

Off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Parking lamps



Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

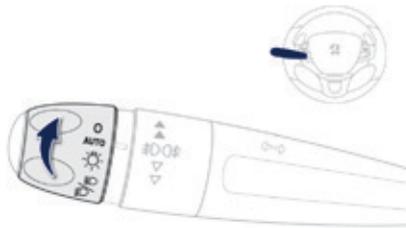
- ☞ Within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the middle position or switch on the ignition.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Switching on

- ☞ Turn the ring to the "AUTO" position. Activation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the guide-me-home lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds,
- automatic activation of guide-me-home lighting when the automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

Programming

Settings for the guide-me-home lighting can be adjusted in the touch screen.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



Select the "Driving" menu.



Display the secondary page.



Select "Vehicle settings".



Select the "Lighting" tab.



Modify the settings for the "Guide-me-home lighting" function.

Operating fault

SERVICE

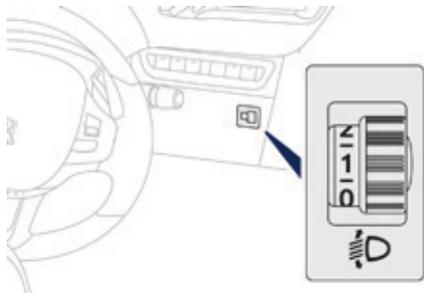
In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Headlamp adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

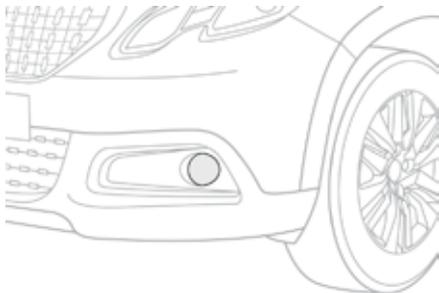
- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
 - Intermediate setting
- 1. 5 people.
 - 5 people + maximum authorised load.
- 2. Driver + maximum authorised load.

i The initial setting is position "0".

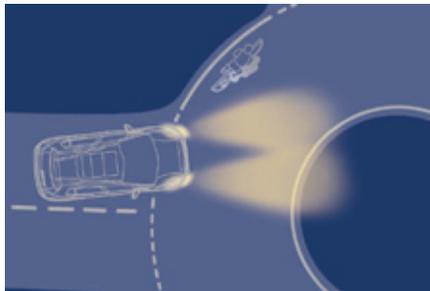
i Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

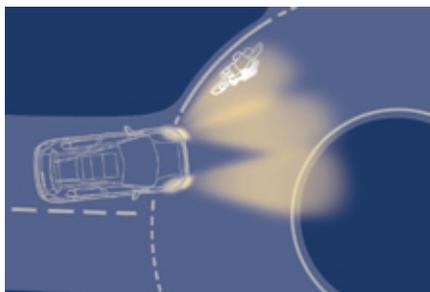
Cornering lighting



With dipped or main beams, this function makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres...).



without cornering lighting



with cornering lighting

Switching on

This function starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
- or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Wiper controls

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

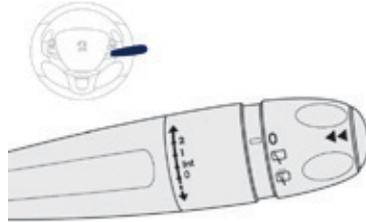
Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

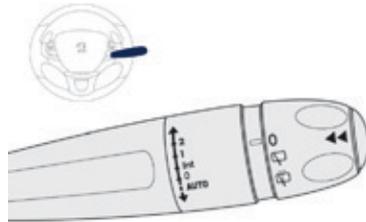
- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.



Model without AUTO wiping



Model with AUTO wiping

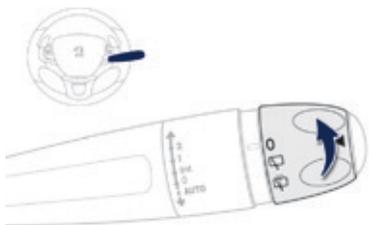
Windscreen wipers

Wiping speed:

- 2** Fast (heavy rain).
- 1** Normal (moderate rain).
- Int** Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
- 0** Park.
-  Single wipe (press down and release).
- AUTO**  Automatic (press down and release).
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash, then the windscreen wipers, operate for a pre-determined time.



Rear wiper

Rear wiper selection ring:



Park.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

Operation of the rear wiper in reverse is a setting in the touch screen.



Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



Select the "**Driving**" menu.



Display the secondary page.



Select "**Vehicle settings**".



Select the "**Driving assistance**" tab.



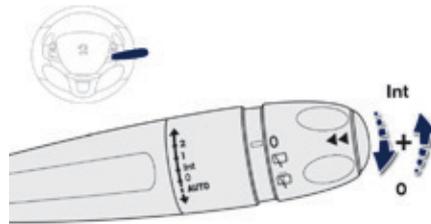
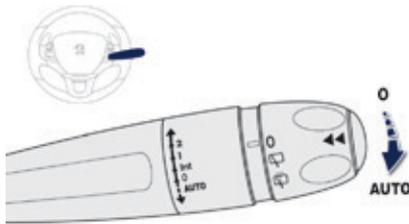
Activate / Deactivate the "**Automatic rear wiper in reverse**" function.

This function is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Switching on



Briefly push the control stalk downwards.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off



Briefly push the control stalk downwards again, or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than 1 minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
- Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition, places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" type of wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Lighting dimmer

System for the manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and the touch screen to suit the ambient light level.

LCD instrument panel



With the headlamps on, press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the interior mood lighting or button **A** to reduce it. As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

Matrix instrument panel



Activation

- ☞ press the button to adjust the brightness of the instruments and controls,
- ☞ release the button when the desired level is attained.

Switching off

When the vehicle lighting is off or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button has no effect.

Touch screen



Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



Select the "**Settings**" menu.



Display the secondary page.



In the secondary page, select "**Screen settings**".

Adjust the brightness by moving the cursor.



You can also switch off the screen. To do this:



In the primary page, select "**Turn off screen**". The screen goes off completely.

Press the screen again (anywhere in its surface) to activate it.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front / rear courtesy lamps
2. Map reading lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is pressed, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.



With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately 30 seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps



With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.



Take care to avoid leaving anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on



At night, interior mood light emitting diodes - LEDs (courtesy lamp, instrument panel, footwells, back-lit roof lining, panoramic glazed sunroof*...) come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

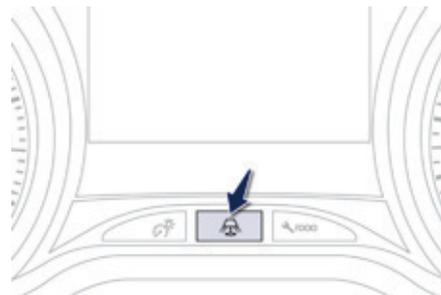
* Depending on version.

Settings

The mood lighting settings can be adjusted in the touch screen.

-  Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.
-  Select the "**Driving**" menu.
-  Display the secondary page.
-  Select "**Vehicle settings**".
-  Select the "**Lighting**" tab.
-  Modify the settings of the "**Mood lighting**" function.

Instrument panel mood lighting



Deactivation

With the exterior lighting on, press this button to turn the instrument panel mood lighting off.

Activation

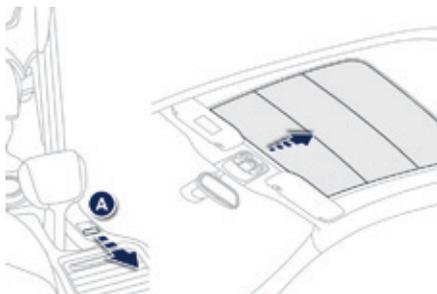
With the exterior lighting on, press this button again turn the instrument panel mood lighting back on.

Panoramic glazed sunroof

System which comprises configurable light guides and a panoramic tinted glass area to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

It is fitted with an electric blind to improve temperature and acoustic comfort.

Electric blind



Opening

- ☞ Lift the control **A** towards the rear.
The blind stops when you release the control.



Closing

- ☞ Lift the control **A** towards the front.
The blind stops when you release the control.

! If something is trapped when operating the blind, you should reverse the movement of the blind. To do this press the control in question.

When the driver operates the blind, they should ensure that nobody prevents its correct closing.

The driver should ensure that passengers use the blind correctly. Be aware of children when operating the blind.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! We draw your attention to the following points:

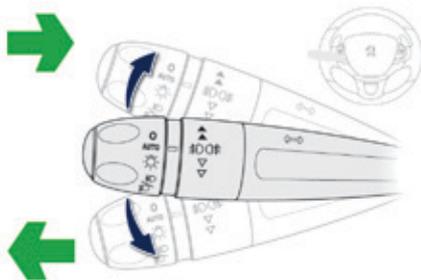
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by PEUGEOT may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle. The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Direction indicators



- ☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the left.
- ☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the right.

i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

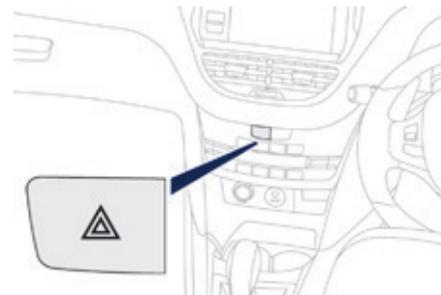
Three flashes

Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash 3 times.

i This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful for changing lane on fast roads.

Hazard warning lamps

Visual warning with of all the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.
- They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation

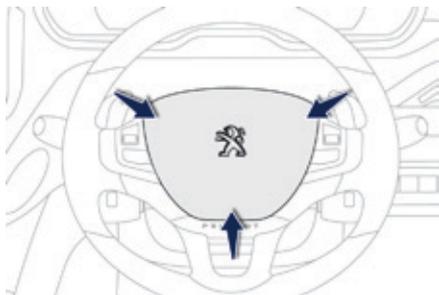
When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

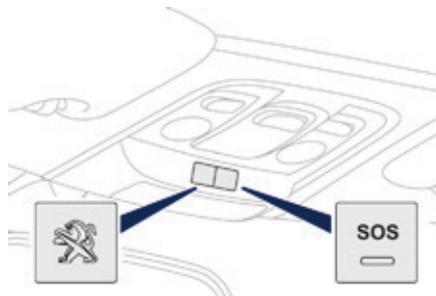
Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

i Use the horn moderately and only in situations allowed by the motoring regulations in the country you are driving in.

Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated PEUGEOT service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.

It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

 The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (high loading, high speed, long journey).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.



The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the identification markings, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert



This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),
- or
- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,
- or
- ☞ if it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

i The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressures are adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle and in line with the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

! The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Without touch screen

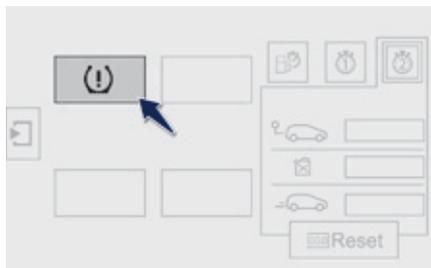


SET

- ☞ With the ignition on and the vehicle stationary, press this button for about 3 seconds then release it, an audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

! The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

With touch screen



Reinitialisation of the system is done with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.



- ☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the different menus.



- ☞ Select the "**Driving**" menu.



- ☞ Press "**Under-inflation initialisation**".

- ☞ Confirm the instruction by pressing "**Yes**", an audible signal and a message confirm the reinitialisation.



The new pressure settings registered are considered to be reference values by the system.

Operating fault



SERVICE

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.



Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

A set of the following Electronic Stability systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance,
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Operation

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



When this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the ABS, which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



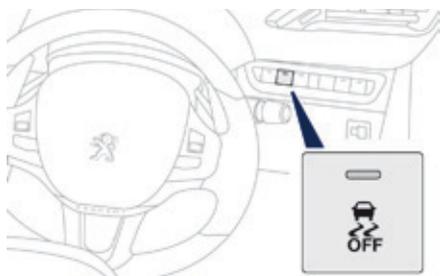
When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD), which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. In both cases, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



When changing wheels (tyres and rims), make sure that these are approved for your vehicle.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



In emergency braking, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.



Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started. As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC system, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



But it is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.



☞ Press the button or, depending on version, turn the knob to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or the knob comes on: the DSC system no longer acts on the operation of the engine.

Reactivation

The system is reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).



☞ Press the button again to reactivate it manually.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



The DSC system offers exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct operation of the system depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the PEUGEOT assembly and operation procedures. After an impact, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Grip control

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand.

This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during touring use).

Associated with all-seasons Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, adhesion and traction. These tyres work equally well in winter and summer.

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on to confirm your choice.

A specific and additional display appears temporarily in the touch screen to confirm the selection made with the knob.



Different modes are provided:

Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.



☞ Place the dial in this position.



Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

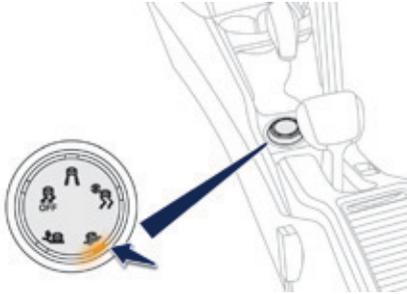


Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 30 mph (50 km/h))



☞ Place the dial in this position.



All terrain (mud, damp grass, ...)

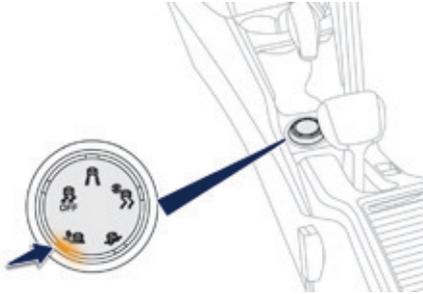
This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to pass as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))



☞ Place the dial in this position.



Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))



☞ Place the dial in this position.

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

You can deactivate certain functions of the ESC (ASR and DSC) by turning the dial to the "OFF" position.

These functions are reactivated automatically from 30 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched back on.

i Driving advice

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to drive on other less passable terrain occasionally.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler...) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Active City Brake

Active City Brake is a driving assistance system that aims to avoid a frontal collision or reduce the speed of an impact if the driver does not react sufficiently (inadequate brake application).

! This system is designed to improve driving safety. It remains the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic and to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles. Active City Brake can in no circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! Never look at the laser sensor through an optical instrument (magnifying glass, microscope...) at a distance of less than 10 centimetres: risk of eye injury.

Principle



Using a laser sensor located at the top of the windscreen, this system detects a vehicle running in the same direction or stationary ahead of your vehicle.

When necessary, the vehicle's braking system is operated automatically to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead.

! Automatic braking occurs later than if done by the driver, so as to intervene only when there is a high risk of collision.

Conditions for activation

Active City Brake only operates if the following conditions are met:

- ignition on,
- the vehicle is in a forward gear,
- speed is between about 3 and 18 mph (5 and 30 km/h),
- the braking assistance systems (ABS, EBF, emergency braking assistance) are not faulty,
- the trajectory control systems (ASR, DSC) are not deactivated or faulty,
- the vehicle is not in a tight corner,
- the system has not been triggered during the previous 10 seconds.

Operation

When your vehicle is too close to or approaches the vehicle ahead too quickly the system automatically applies the brakes to avoid a collision.

You are then alerted by the display of a message.

The brake lamps on your vehicle come on to warn other road users.

The collision can be avoided automatically if the difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead does not exceed 9 mph (15 km/h). Above this threshold, the system will do what is possible to avoid or reduce the accident by lowering the speed of impact.

The automatic braking may bring the vehicle to a complete stop if the situation requires it. In this case, the vehicle is held stationary temporarily (for about 1.5 seconds) to allow the driver to take back control by pressing the brake pedal.

i The triggering of the system may cause the engine to stall, unless the driver depresses the clutch pedal quickly enough during automatic braking.

i During automatic braking, the driver can always obtain a higher rate of deceleration than that controlled by the system, by pressing firmly on the brake pedal.

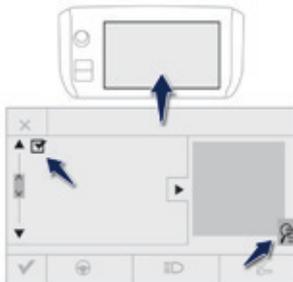
! After an impact, the system is automatically put out of service: it no longer operates. You must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system made operational again.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu, accessible with the ignition on. Its state is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

i When the system is deactivated, a message is displayed every time the ignition is switched on, to warn you.

With the touch screen



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button.
- ☞ Select the **"Driving"** menu.
- ☞ In the secondary page, select **"Vehicle settings"**.
- ☞ Select the **"Driving assistance"** tab.
- ☞ Check or uncheck the **"Auto emergency braking"** box to activate or deactivate the system.
- ☞ Confirm.

Operating limits

The system only detects vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

! It does not detect small vehicles (bicycles, motorcycles), pedestrians or animals, nor non-reflective stationary objects.

The system is not triggered or is interrupted if the driver:

- accelerates strongly
- or turns the steering wheel suddenly (avoiding manoeuvre).

! In difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow, fog, hail...), braking distances increase, which can reduce the ability of the system to avoid a collision.
The driver must therefore remain particularly vigilant.

! Never leave accumulations of snow or any object projecting above the bonnet or in front of the roof: this might fall into the field of vision of the sensor and generate a detection.

Operating faults

Sensor fault

The operation of the laser sensor may suffer interference from accumulations of dirt or misting of the windscreen. In this case you are warned by the display of a message. Use the windscreen demisting and regularly clean the area of the windscreen in front of the sensor.

! Do not stick or otherwise fix any object on the windscreen in front of the sensor.

System fault

In the event of a malfunction of the system, you are warned by an audible signal and the display of the message "**Automatic braking system fault**".

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of an impact to the windscreen at the sensor, deactivate the system and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have your windscreen replaced.

! Never try to remove, adjust or test the sensor.
Only a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is able to work on the system.

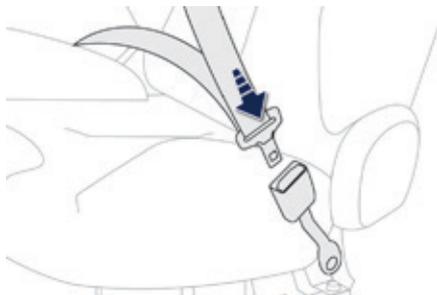
! When towing a trailer or when the vehicle is being towed, the system must be deactivated.

Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on. The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

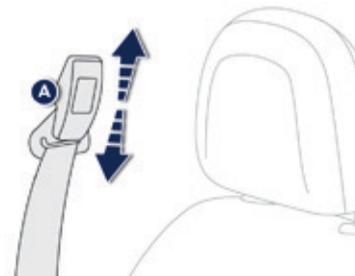


Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.



Height adjustment

- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

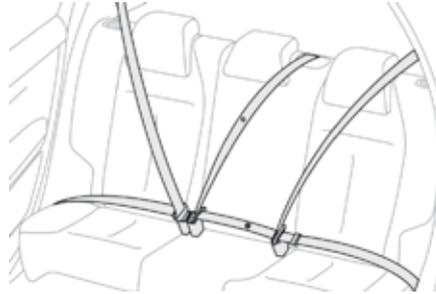


When the ignition is switched on,
this warning lamp comes on in the
instrument panel.

It remains on for a certain time if the front
passenger has not fastened their seat belt.
After this time, the warning lamp goes off if the
driver's seat belt is fastened.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this
warning lamp flashes for 2 minutes if the driver
and/or front passenger has not fastened their
seat belt, accompanied by an audible signal of
increasing volume. Once these 2 minutes have
elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the
driver and/or the front passenger fastens their
seat belt.

Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point
seat belt.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in
the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened
correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

! Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide. Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on child seats, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

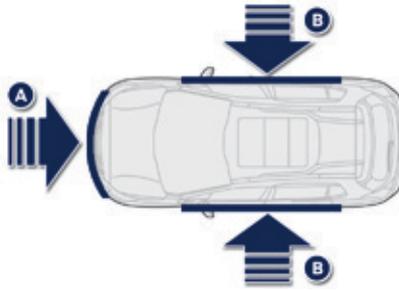
System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! **The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

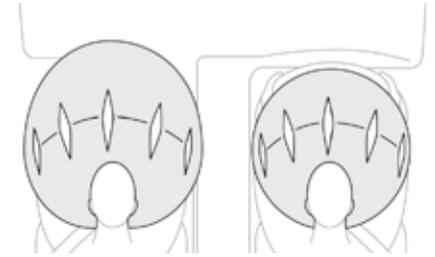


Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it has been deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.



Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



When the ignition is on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel while the airbag is deactivated.



To assure your child's safety, you must deactivate the passenger's front airbag when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the rearward facing child seat, **with the ignition on**, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags

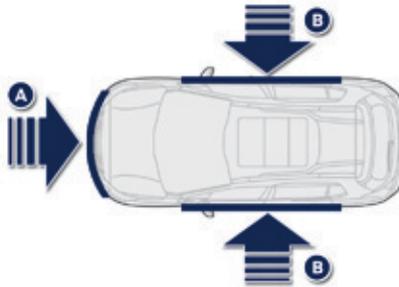


System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

! Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

For more information on accessories, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Carrying children

Although one of PEUGEOT's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

General points

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

i PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **outer rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

At the rear

Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.

Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.



Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

In the front*



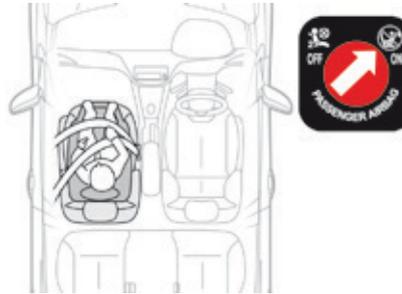
Rearward facing

When a rearward-facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to:

- the intermediate longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened for a seat without height adjuster,
- the intermediate longitudinal position and highest position, with the backrest straightened for a seat with height adjuster.

The passenger airbag must be deactivated.

Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.**

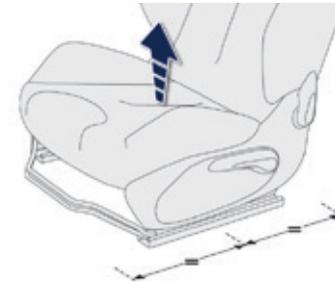


Forward facing

When a forward-facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to:

- the intermediate longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened for a seat without height adjuster,
- the intermediate longitudinal position and highest position, with the backrest straightened for a seat with height adjuster.

The passenger's airbag must remain activated.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.



Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

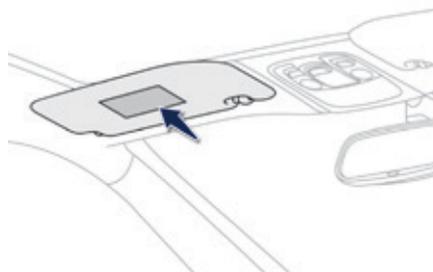
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in steady contact with the floor. If not, adjust the passenger seat.

* Refer to the legislation in your country before installing your child in this seating position.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



Passenger airbag OFF



Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ With the ignition off, introduce the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- ☞ Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.



When the ignition is on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الورااء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumistujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuunta selkã ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVE. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TESKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használnjok menetirányanak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÜLYÖS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrengkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgretžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKADA NEuzstādiēt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekli priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.

MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalix tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøretretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTELNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIETĎA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L4

"KLIPPAN Optima"

From 22 kg (approximately 6 years), the booster is used on its own.



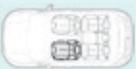
L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured with the seat belt

In accordance with the European regulation, this table indicates the options for the installation of child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Weight of the child / indicative age				
Seat	Less than 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to 1 year approx	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From 1 to 3 years approx	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From 3 to 6 years approx	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat (c) 				
- with height adjustment	U(R)	U(R)	U(R)	U(R)
- without height adjustment	U	U	U	U
Outer rear seats (d) 	U	U	U	U
Centre rear seat 	X	X	X	X

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
 - (b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
 - (c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
 - (d) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.
- U:** seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing.
- U(R):** as for **U**, the vehicle seat must be adjusted to the highest position and the intermediate longitudinal position.
- X:** seating position not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.



Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible. You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

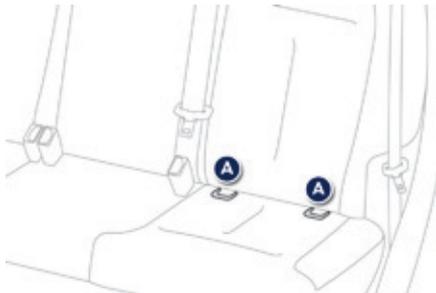
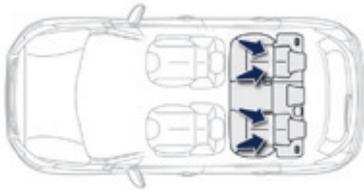
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

"ISOFIX" mountings

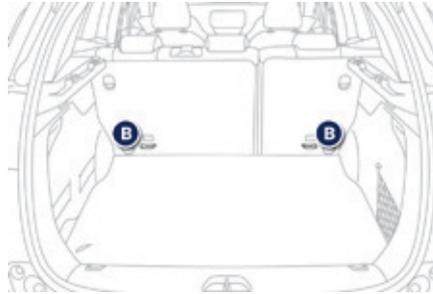
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulation**.

The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B** behind the seat for fixing the upper strap, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**.

The TOP TETHER is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This arrangement limits the forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact. This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, known as the TOP TETHER, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the TOP TETHER:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat in this seating position (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the strap of the child seat over the top of the seat backrest, centred between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

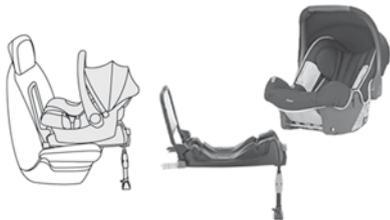
i The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Follow the instructions for fitting child seats contained in the installation guide supplied with the child seat.

! For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its Baby-Safe Plus ISOFIX base" (size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This seat can be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base (size categories: D, C, A, B, B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used "forward facing". This seat can **not** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing" position up to the age of 3 years.

i Follow the instructions for fitting child seats contained in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**

Installed forward facing.

Attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.

In this case, it must be secured to the seat using the three-point seat belt.

FAIR G 0/1 S and its **RWF A ISOFIX** base (size category **C**)**Group 0+ and 1: from birth to 18 kg**

Installed in the rearward facing position using its ISOFIX base, which is attached to the rings **A**.

6 positions of inclination of the shell.

Use the **RWF** type **A** ISOFIX base.

This child seat can also be used in a forward facing position on seating positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.

In this case the shell of the child seat must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

i Follow the instructions for fitting child seats contained in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Locations for child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+) Up to approx. 1 year			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Infant car seat		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Front passenger seat 	Not ISOFIX									
Outer rear seats 	X		IL-SU*	IL-SU		IL-SU*	IL-SU	IUF IL-SU		
Centre rear seat 	Not ISOFIX									

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

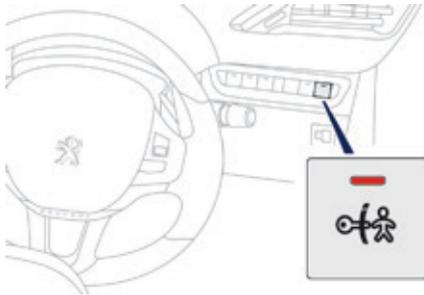
X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat for the weight group indicated.

* Vehicle seat in a particular position: move the seats in front of the child forward.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.



Switching on

☞ With the ignition on, press this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is on. This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off. It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Switching off

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is off.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Fuel tank

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres.

Low fuel level



When the fuel tank minimum level is reached this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. There remains **approximately 5 litres** of fuel in the tank. When the warning lamp flashes there is **very little fuel** remaining in the tank.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on running out of fuel (Diesel), refer to the corresponding section.

i The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is refitted. Removing the filler cap may cause an inrush of air. This vacuum is perfectly normal and results from the sealing of the system.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

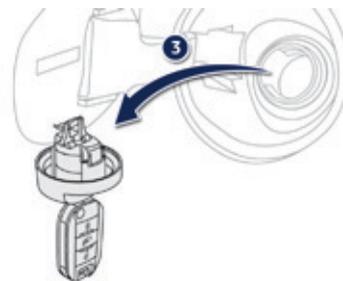
Refuelling



1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Hook the filler cap.

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.



To fill the tank safely:

- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap by pressing at its rear **1**,
- ☞ insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left **2**,
- ☞ remove the cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the flap **3**,
- ☞ fill the tank, **but do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the pump**; this could cause malfunctions.

When you have filled the tank:

- ☞ put the cap back in place,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the flap.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the engine of your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

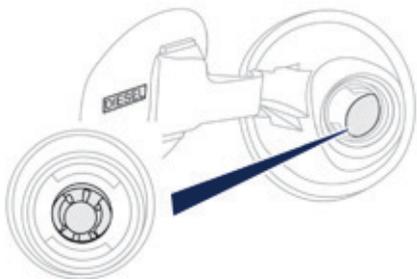
Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with E10 bio-petrol (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels available at the pumps which meet current and future European standards:

- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN 14214,
- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),
- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions". For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system). Only the use of Diesel fuel additives that meet the standard B715000 is authorised.



Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicle fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

For versions with a manual priming pump, refer to the drawing of the corresponding underbonnet view.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the corresponding section.

i If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

1.6 litre BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Add at least 5 litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- ☞ Switch the ignition on (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter motor to start the engine.

1.6 litre e-HDi 92 engine

- ☞ Add at least 5 litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

AdBlue® and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

Presentation of the SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is held in a special tank with a capacity of about 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the necessary top-up carried out.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine. If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting. In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

Range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)

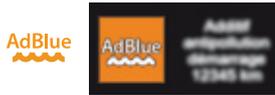
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button displays the driving range temporarily.

Above 3 000 miles (5 000 km), the value is not specified.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the fluid has been topped-up.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped-up.

You can also top-up the tank yourself.

For more information on topping-up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the fluid has been topped-up.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® topped-up.

You can also top-up the tank yourself.

Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

i For more information on topping-up the AdBlue®, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented". The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault". The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Topping-up the AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement. You can go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute AdBlue® with water.
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies topping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

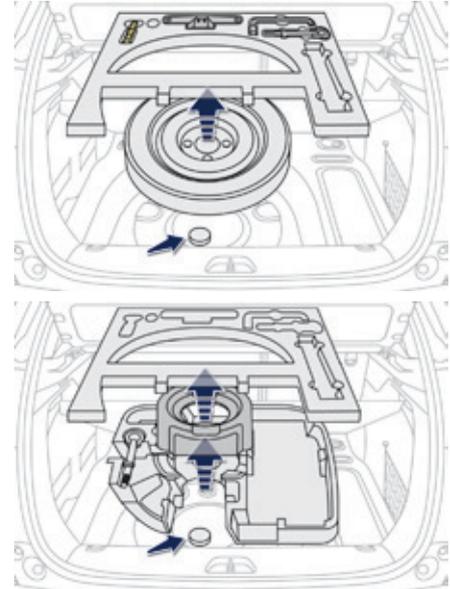
♻️ Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.



Access

☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, raise the boot carpet then, depending on equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage box.



Opening

- ☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Lift off the cap.

Filling

- ☞ Pour the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
- ☞ Wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine, you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

! If any fluid is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

Closing

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.
- ☞ Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.
- ☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

! **Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue®**, signalled by the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented", you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle or introducing the key into the ignition switch.**
Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Repair kit with separate sealant cartridge (depending on version)

This kit comprises a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

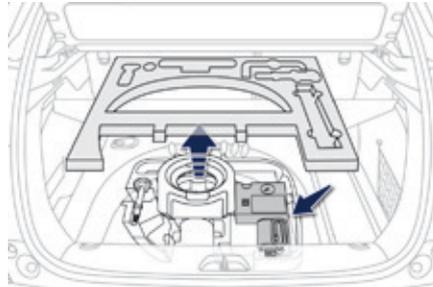
It allows the temporary repair of a tyre.

You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

It can be used for repairing most punctures on the tread or shoulder of the tyre.

Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Access to the kit

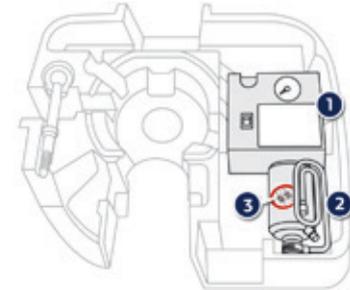


This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.



The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.



The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

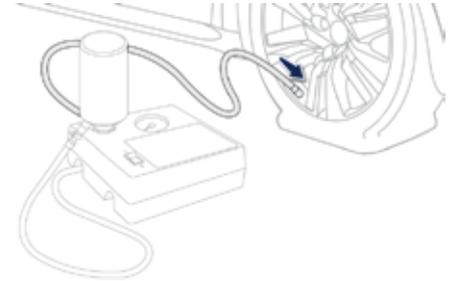


- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.

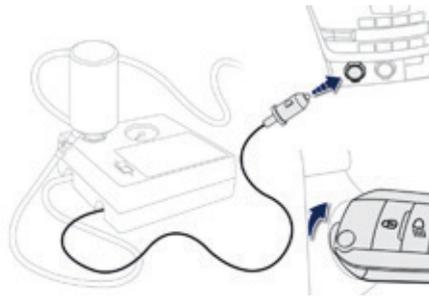
i Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



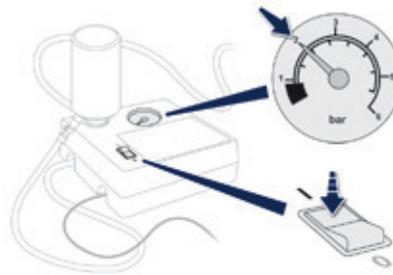
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.
- ☞ Turn the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.



- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.
- ☞ Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.



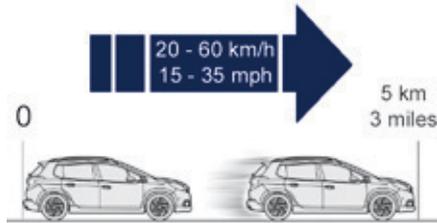
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position).
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "I" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar. The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

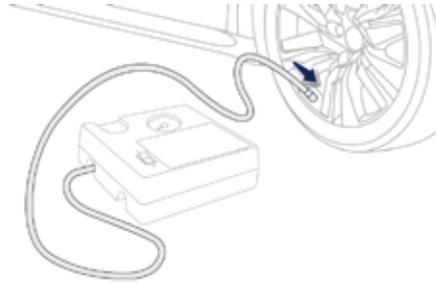
i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date is marked on the cartridge. After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



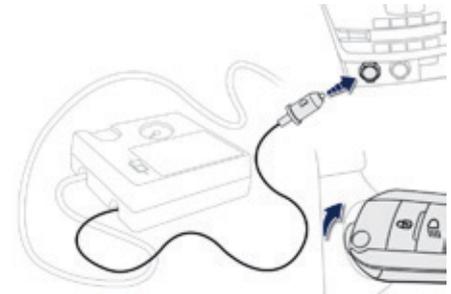
- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit.
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

Checking and inflating

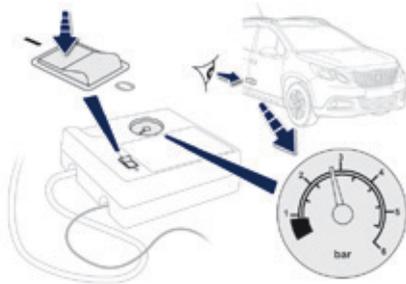


To check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.



- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "I" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

i Tyre under-inflation detection

After repair of the tyre, the warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.

For more information on under-inflation detection, refer to the corresponding section.

- ! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on under-inflation detection, refer to the corresponding section.

Repair kit with integral sealant cartridge (depending on version)

This kit comprises a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

It allows the temporary repair of a tyre.

You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

It can be used for repairing most punctures on the tread or shoulder of the tyre.

Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.



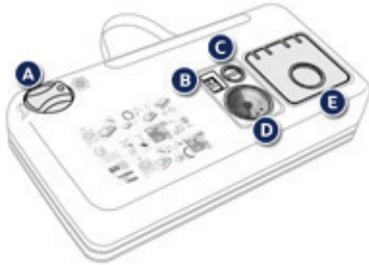
List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. 12 V compressor.
Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Removable towing eye.

For more information on towing the vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.

Description of the kit



- A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
- B. On "I" / off "O" switch.
- C. Deflation button.
- D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).
- E. Compartment housing:
 - a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
 - various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

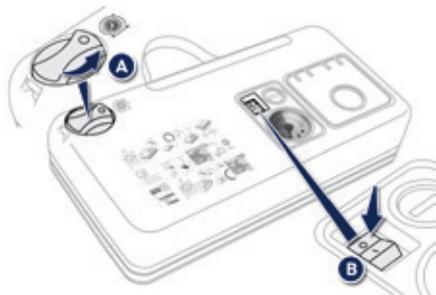


- F. Sealant cartridge.
- G. White pipe with cap for repair.
- H. Black pipe for inflation.
- I. Speed limit sticker.

i The speed limit sticker I must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Repair procedure

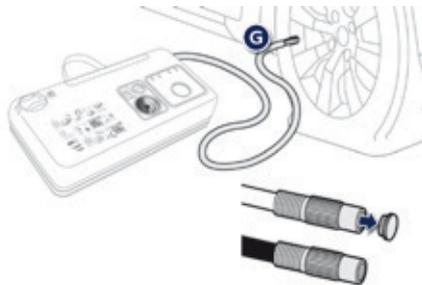


1. Sealing

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- ☞ Check that the switch **B** is in position "O".



i Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

! Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

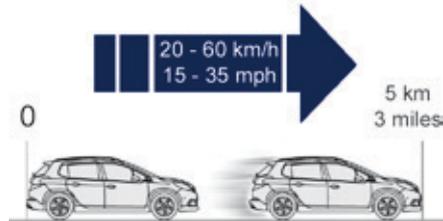


- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



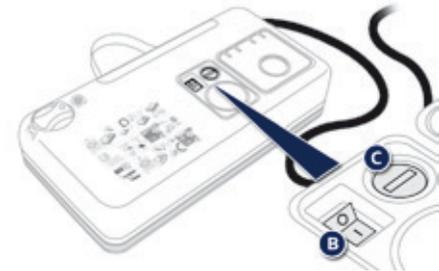
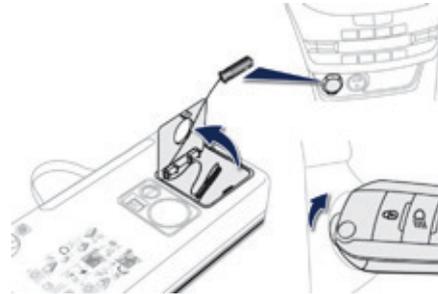
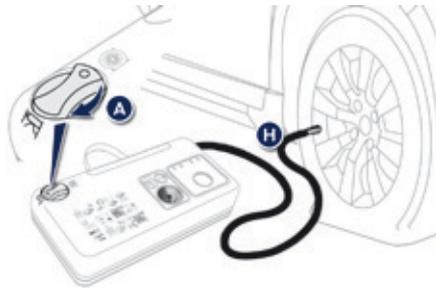
- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

i Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



- ☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.



2. Inflation

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.

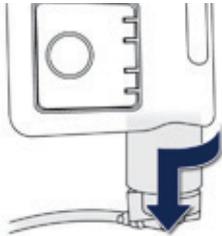


- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

! As soon as possible, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture). A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- ☞ Remove and stow the kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

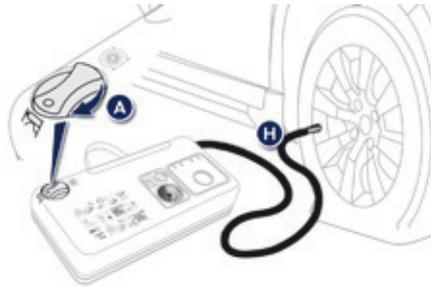
Removing the cartridge



- ☞ Stow the black pipe.
- ☞ Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- ☞ Support the compressor vertically.
- ☞ Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
 The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
 The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
 After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.
 Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories



You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.
 If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.

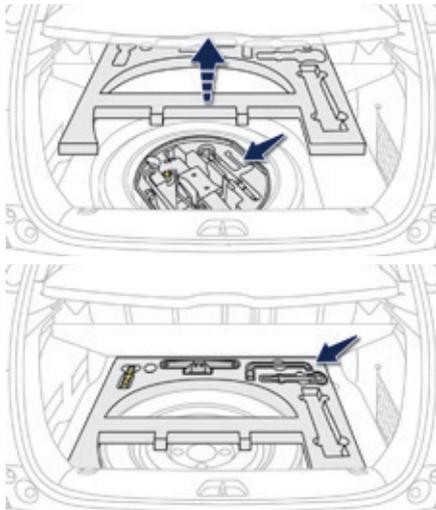


- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

Changing a wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

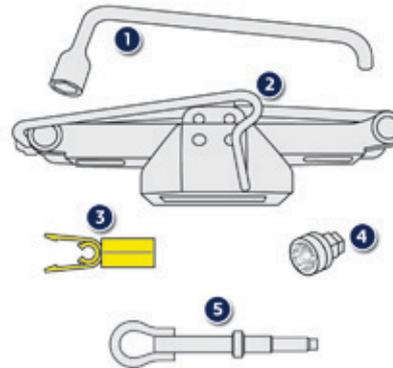
Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene spacer,
- ☞ remove the carrier box containing the tools.



List of tools*

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
For raising the vehicle.

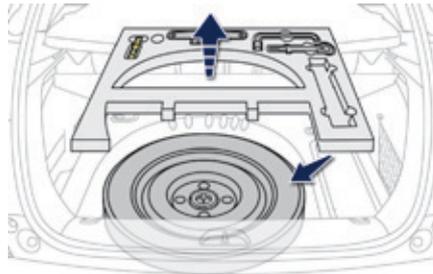
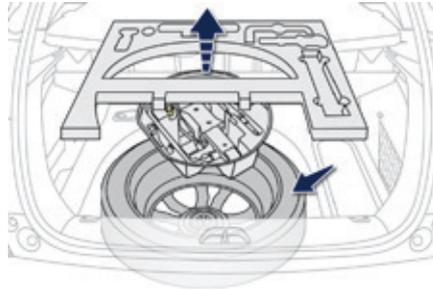
3. "Bolt cover" tool.
For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Removable towing eye.
For more information on the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on the country of sale.

i Wheel with wheel trim

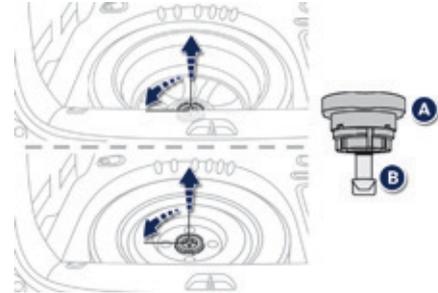
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim starting by placing its cut-out facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel*



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

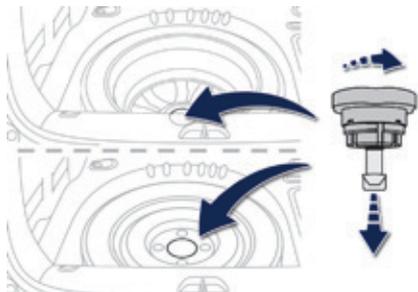
The spare wheel is a steel wheel or a space-saver wheel, depending on the country of sale. It is secured by a nut **A** and a screw **B**. For the nut, proceed as follows.



Taking out the wheel

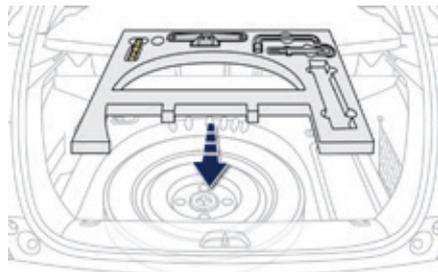
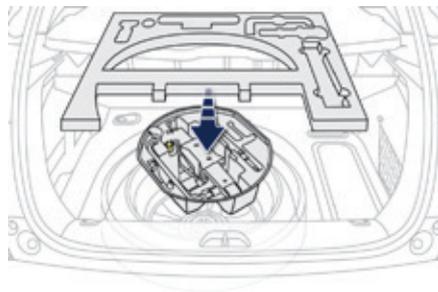
- ⌚ Unscrew the central (coloured) nut.
- ⌚ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ⌚ Take the wheel out of the boot.

* Depending on the country of sale.



Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the central (coloured) nut by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in the centre of the wheel and clip it in place.
- ☞ Refit the polystyrene storage box to restrain the unit.

Removing a wheel

i Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and not slippery.

Apply the parking brake.

Switch off the ignition.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to block the wheels.

With an electronic gearbox, place the gear selector at position **R** to block the wheels.

With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector at position **P** to block the wheels.

Check that the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel come on.

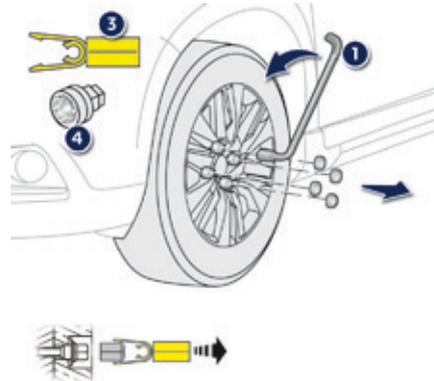
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



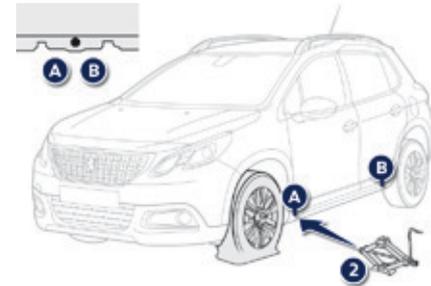
Never use:

- the jack for any other purpose than raising the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one provided by the manufacturer.

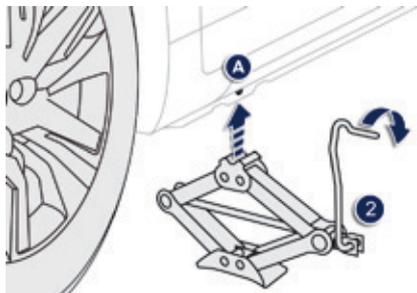


List of operations

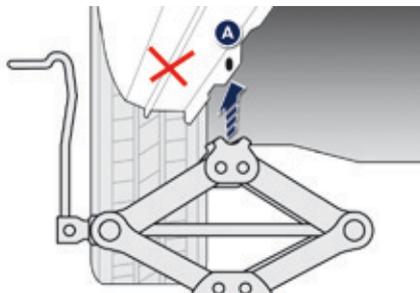
- ☞ Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (according to equipment).
- ☞ Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (if fitted).
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



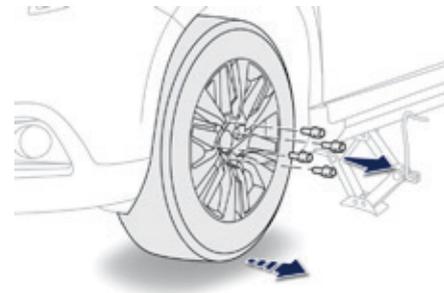
- ☞ Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until it comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.



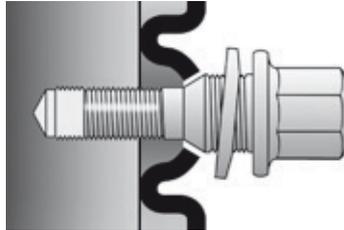
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable on a surface that is not slippery or loose and positioned only at the jacking point **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact area on the vehicle is well centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping or slipping - Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



i Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical shoulder of each bolt (see drawing).

When refitting the alloy wheel, ensure that the wheel bolt washers are clean and in good condition.

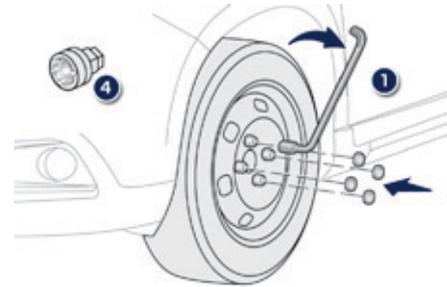
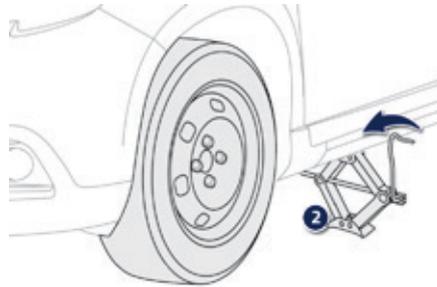
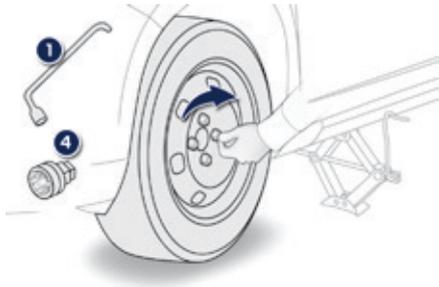
i After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and refitted to the vehicle as soon as possible.



List of operations

- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts fully by hand.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4 (if your vehicle has them).
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.

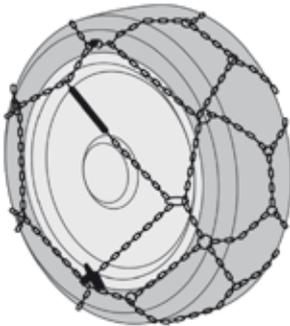
- ☞ Lower the vehicle fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack 2 and detach it.

- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4 (if your vehicle has them).
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers on each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools in the carrier box.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

i The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.



Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
195/65 R15	9 mm
195/60 R16	
205/55 R16	
205/50 R17	

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

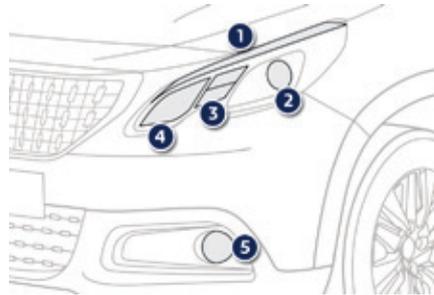
i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Changing a bulb

- !** The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

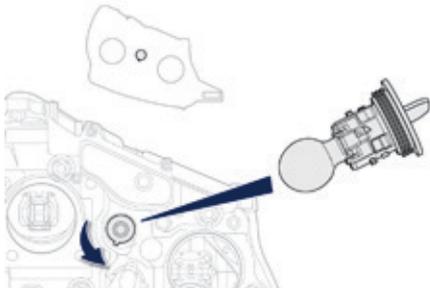
- i** Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
- Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps



1. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
3. **Direction indicators (PWY-24W).**
4. **Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
5. **Front foglamps (with "cornering lighting" function according to version) (PSX-24W).**

- i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.



Changing direction indicator bulbs

i Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and extract it.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.
When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.



Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Spread the spring to release the bulb.
- ☞ Extract the bulb and change it.

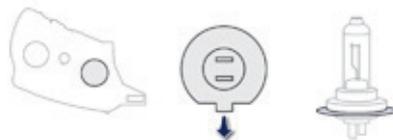


To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order, positioning the alignment lug at the bottom.

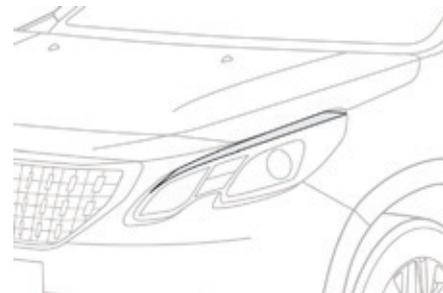


Changing main beam headlamp bulbs

- 🔧 Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- 🔧 Disconnect the bulb connector.
- 🔧 Pull out the bulb and replace it.

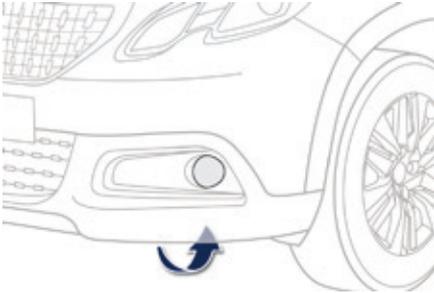


To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order, positioning the alignment lug at the bottom.



Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

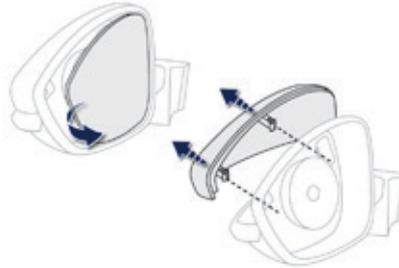


Changing front foglamp / directional lamps

- ☞ Access to the front foglamp is through the orifice below the bumper.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector by pressing on the top of the tongue.
- ☞ Extract the bulb holder by pressing on the two clips (top and bottom).
- ☞ Replace the module.

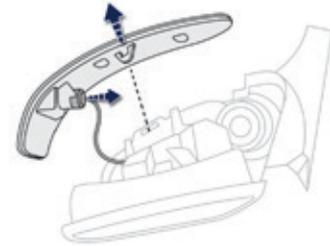
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i To obtain this module, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. You can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for this replacement.



Changing integrated direction indicator side repeater bulbs

- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver between the mirror glass and its base.
- ☞ Use the screwdriver as a lever to extract the mirror glass.
- ☞ Unclip the mirror shell by pressing on the two retaining clips.

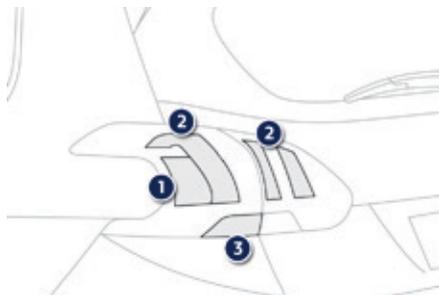


- ☞ Press the central tongue and remove the side repeater.
- ☞ Pull the bulb holder out and replace the failed bulb.

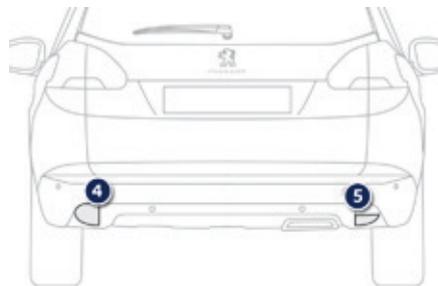
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

You should contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

Rear lamps



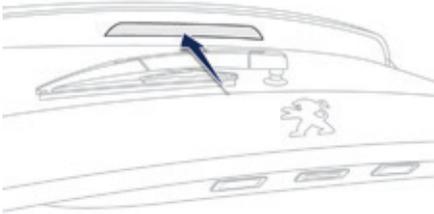
1. Brake lamps (P21W) (light-emitting diodes-LEDs).
2. Sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).
3. Direction indicators (PY21W amber) (light-emitting diodes-LEDs).



4. Foglamp (P21W).
5. Reversing lamp (P21W).

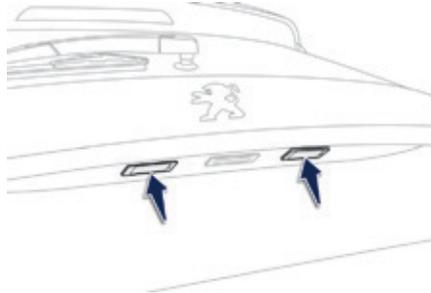
i Light-emitting diodes - LEDs

For replacement, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.



Changing the third brake lamp (light-emitting diodes - LEDs)

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

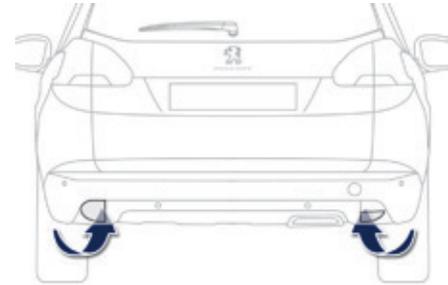


Number plate lamps

To facilitate the removal of the lamp, carry out this operation with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the lens cutout.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.



Changing a foglamp or reversing lamp bulb

Access is by passing a hand under the bumper.

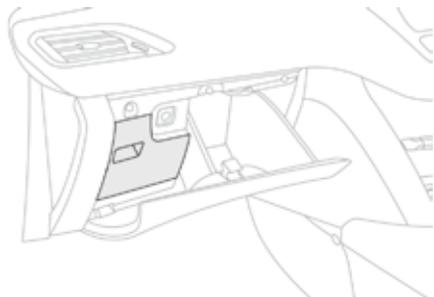
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the failed bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! On the left hand side, take care to not touch the exhaust silencer; risk of burns if changing a bulb after stopping the engine.

Changing a fuse

Accessing the tools



The extraction tweezers is fitted to the back of the fusebox cover located inside the glove box.

- ☞ Open the glove box lid,
- ☞ unclip the fusebox cover by pulling at the top right,
- ☞ disengage the cover completely and turn it over,

- ☞ remove the carrier on which the tweezers is fitted.

Changing a fuse

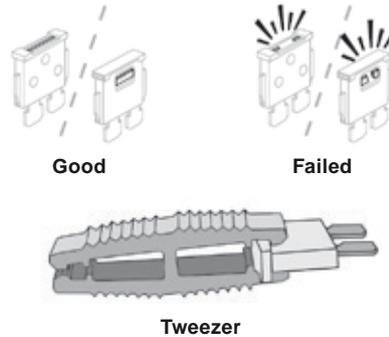
Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and layout drawings in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



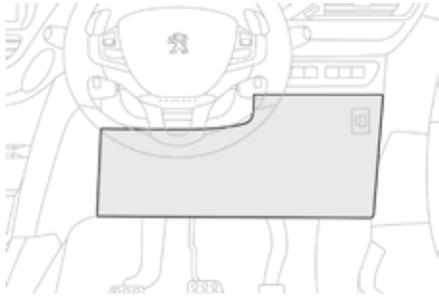
- ! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

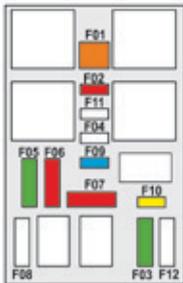
- ! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Fuses in the dashboard



The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (right-hand side).

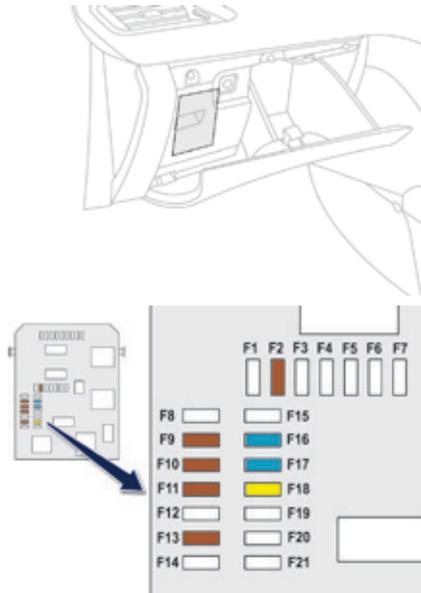
Access to the fuses



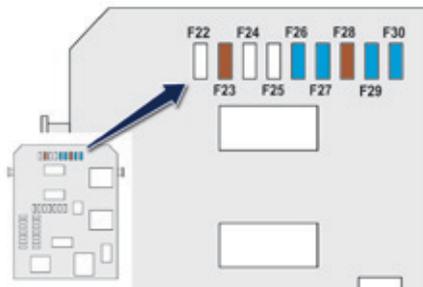
Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F01	40 A	Heated rear window.
F02	10 A	Heated door mirrors.
F03	30 A	Front one-touch windows.
F04	-	Not used.
F05	30 A	Rear one-touch windows.
F06	10 A	Folding door mirrors.
F07	10 A	Folding door mirrors.
F08	-	Not used.
F09	15 A	Front electric windows (not one-touch).
F10	20 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F11	-	Not used.
F12	-	Not used.

Fuses in the glove box

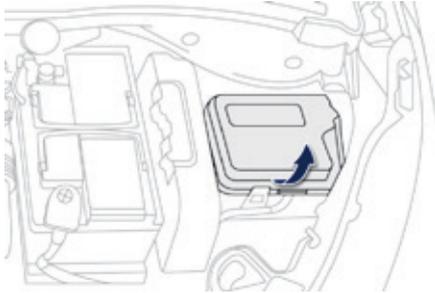


Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F2	5 A	Door mirrors, headlamps, diagnostic socket.
F9	5 A	Alarm.
F10	5 A	Independent telematic unit.
F11	5 A	Electrochrome rear view mirror, additional heating, Active City Brake.
F13	5 A	Hi-Fi amplifier, parking sensors, reversing camera
F16	15 A	Front 12 V socket.
F17	15 A	Audio system (without touch screen).
F18	20 A	Touch screen, audio system (if touch screen).



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F23	5 A	Vanity mirrors, map reading lamps.
F26	15 A	Horn.
F27	15 A	Screenwash pump.
F28	5 A	Anti-theft.
F29	15 A	Air conditioning compressor.
F30	15 A	Rear wiper.

Fuses under the bonnet



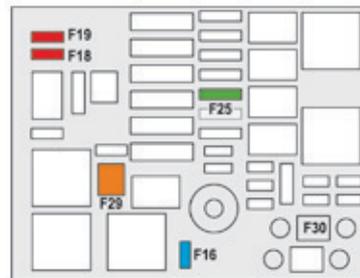
The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F16	15 A	Daytime running lamps.
F18	10 A	Right hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10 A	Left hand main beam headlamp.
F25	30 A	Headlamp wash relay (accessory).
F29	40 A	Front wiper motor.
F30	80 A	Pre-heater plugs (Diesel).



12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

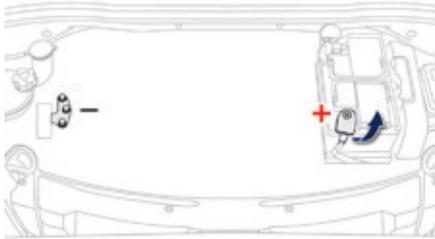


Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



If you have an electronic or automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

! The (-) battery terminal is not accessible.
A remote earth point is located on the front left-hand wheel arch.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

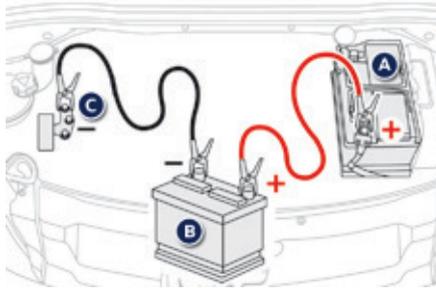
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).

Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.

! Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.



- ☞ Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
 - ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
 - ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
 - ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
 - ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
 - ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

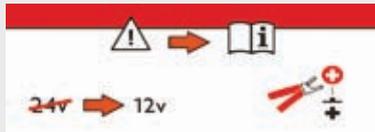
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

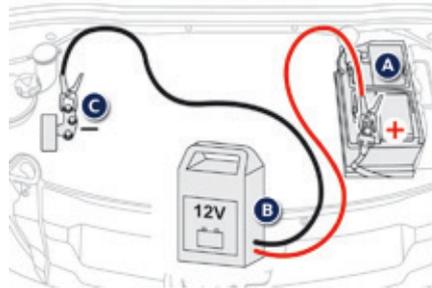


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

- ! Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

- i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).



- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.

Disconnecting the battery

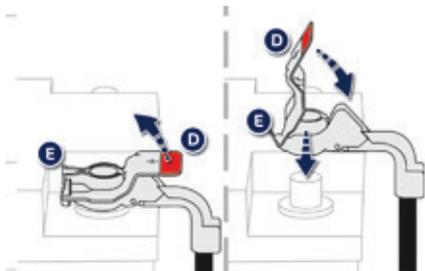
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

Having exposed the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

Quick-release terminal



Disconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Raise the lever **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

Reconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- ☞ Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- ☞ Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the lever **D**.

! Do not apply excessive force on the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery. If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery. Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if problems remain following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the on-board satellite navigation system.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the ambient temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Electrical energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to retain a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about 30 minutes.

Switching to economy mode

Once this time has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

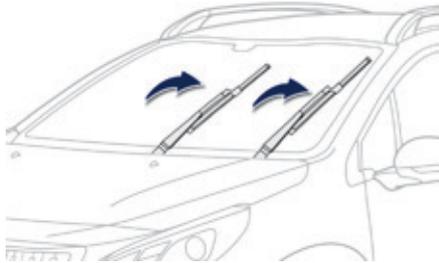
Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

- ☞ To restore these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding section).

Changing a wiper blade



Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

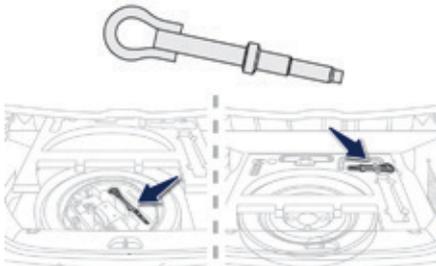
After fitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Towing eye



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

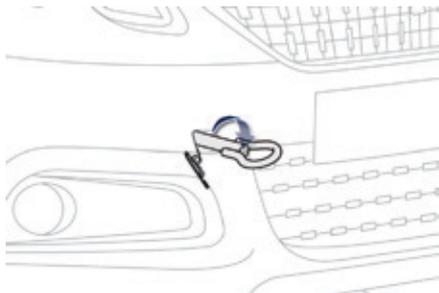
The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle

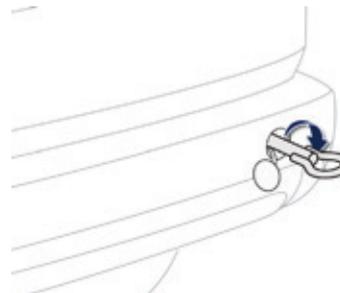


- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by inserting the flat end of the towing eye in the bottom of the cover.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing arm.

i ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on an electronic or automatic gearbox). Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition one notch and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing arm.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

i Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care. For more advice on driving when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

! You must observe the maximum trailer weight, indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical specification for your vehicle.

i For more information on weights (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

When towing

Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

i For more information on weights (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

STOP

- ☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

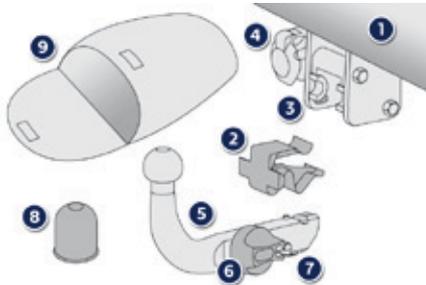
For more information on adjusting the headlamp beam height, refer to the corresponding section.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

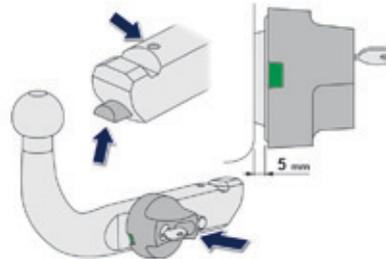
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

Presentation

This towbar allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without the use of tools. Installed behind the rear bumper, the towbar is invisible after removing the towball and folding the trailer harness socket carrier.

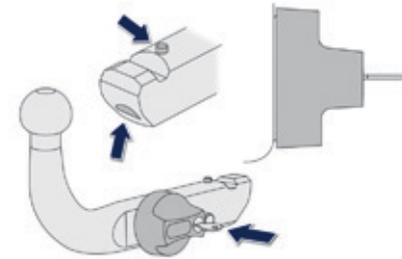


1. Carrier.
2. Protective blanking plug.
3. Security ring.
4. Folding trailer harness socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking / unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Ball protector.
9. Storage bag.



A. Locked position

The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).
The green mark is visible.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.
The bolt is visible and extends beyond the towball.



B. Unlocked position

The locking wheel is in contact with the towball.
The green mark is hidden.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward.
The peg is not visible.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

i For more information on the technical characteristics of the towbar (its maximum load, ...), refer to the corresponding section.
For information on safely towing a trailer, refer to the corresponding section.

i Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted by verifying the following points:

- the towball is correctly locked in place (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must no longer move at all in its carrier; try to shake it by hand.

During use

Never unlock the towball when a trailer or load carrier is fitted.

Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle plus trailer (Gross Train Weight - GTW).

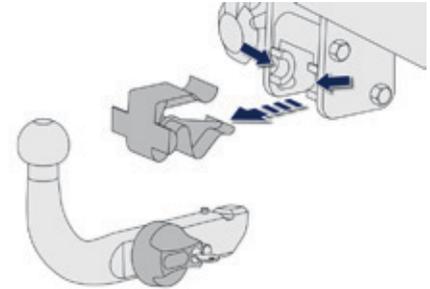
Before driving, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.

For more information on adjusting the headlamps, refer to the corresponding section.

After use

For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer harness socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the protective blanking plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

Fitting the towball



Remove the protective blanking plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system. If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or clean cloth.

Take the towball from the storage bag.

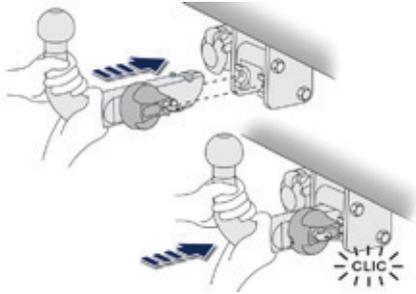
Remove the protective cover from the ball.

Stow the plug and cover in the storage bag.

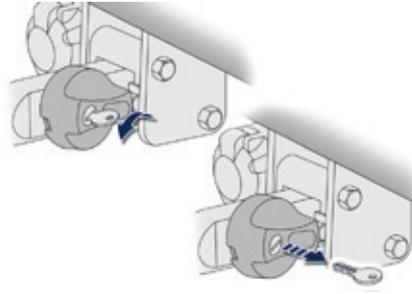
Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**).

If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key clockwise to unlock the mechanism.

Then press the locking wheel and turn it fully clockwise.



Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, pull firmly down on the ball end of the towball. The locking wheel automatically turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise, making a perceptible click; take care to keep your hands clear.



Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position **A**).

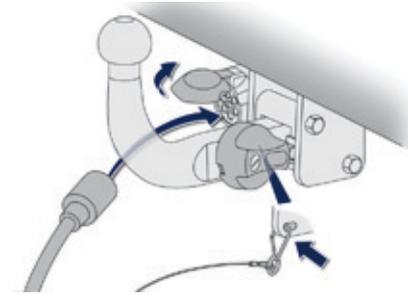
Turn the key anti-clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.

Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again.

If one of the locking conditions is not met, start the procedure again.

In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towbar and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



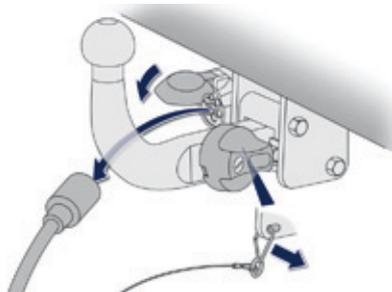
Attach the trailer to the towball.

Attach the cable on the trailer to the security ring located on the carrier.

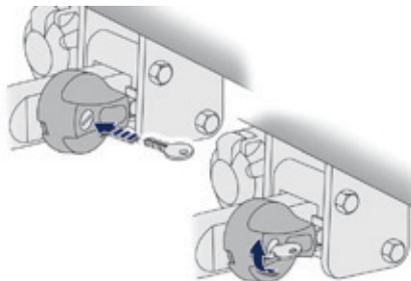
Lower the trailer harness socket carrier by pulling down on the ring visible below the bumper.

Remove the protective cover from the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.

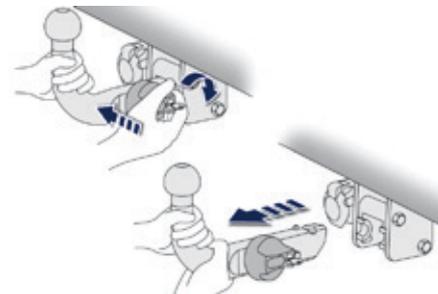
Removing the towball



Disconnect the trailer harness from the socket on the carrier.
Detach the cable on the trailer from the security ring on the carrier.
Unhook the trailer from the towball.
Return the trailer harness connector carrier to the folded position.

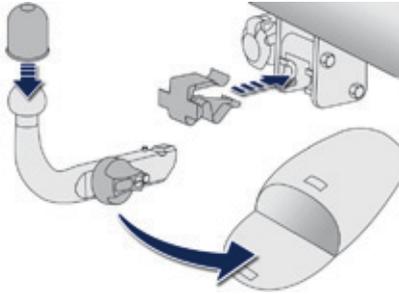


Insert the key into the lock.
Turn the key clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.



Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.
Extract the towball from the bracket.
Remove the key to avoid it being damaged when stowing the towball.

! Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!



Refit the protective cover for the ball.
 Stow the towball in its bag.
 Refit the protective blanking plug to the carrier.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier remain clean. Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the towbar harness socket carrier must be folded away, the towball removed and the protective blanking plug inserted in the carrier.

i For any work on the towbar, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Stowing the towball

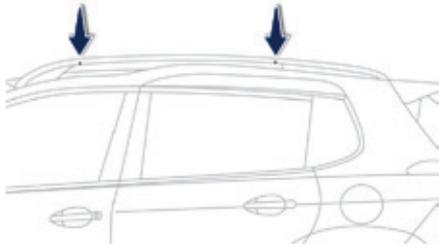
It is recommended that the removable towball be safely stowed, preferably in a storage space below the boot floor.

Attach the towball using the bag tie cord.

! Never leave the removable towball unsecured in the boot. In the event of sudden braking, a towball left loose in the boot could present a danger to passengers in the vehicle. Furthermore, the towball and the boot risk being damaged.

Fitting roof bars

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the installation of longitudinal bars.
To install transverse roof bars, observe the fitting positions indicated by markings on the longitudinal roof bars.



! Use accessories recommended by PEUGEOT, observing the manufacturer's recommendations and fitting instructions so as to avoid the risk of damaging the body (deformation, scratches, ...).
To place a load on the roof, it is necessary to mount the load on the transverse roof bars.
The longitudinal roof bars are not removable.

i Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): refer to the instructions provided with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Advice on care and maintenance

Recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the warranty and maintenance record.

Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the PEUGEOT dealer network. These accessories and parts are all suitable for your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a private car into a trade vehicle.

"Transport solutions":

boot liner, luggage net, roof bars, bicycle carrier on roof bars, ski carrier, roof box, ...

"Security and safety":

anti-theft alarm, window engraving, wheel security bolts, child seats and booster cushions, breathalyzer, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, stolen vehicle tracking system, temporary puncture repair kit, snow chains, non-slip covers, front foglamps kit, dog guard...

"Comfort":

door deflectors, side blinds and rear blind, cigarette lighter, boot dividers, coat hanger fixed to head restraint, front and rear parking sensors...

"Styling":

gear lever knob, spoiler, styling strips, alloy wheels, trims, chromed mirror shells, mirror personalisation kits, wheel caps and exterior stickers...

"Protection":

mats*, seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, mud flaps, door sill protectors, bumper protection strips, aluminium foot rest...

- * To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
 - never fit one mat on top of another.

"Multimedia":

audio systems, portable satellite navigation systems, semi-integral support for portable satellite navigation system, hands-free kit, speakers, connection kit for MP3 or CD player, CD player for touch screen...

By visiting a PEUGEOT dealer, you can also obtain products for cleaning and maintenance (exterior and interior) - including ecological products in the "TECHNATURE" range, topping up products (screenwash...), touch-up pens and paint aerosols for the exact colour of your vehicle, refills (cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...), ...

i Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

! The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL, A PARTNERSHIP TO DELIVER BETTER PERFORMANCE!

2015 was marked by PEUGEOT's return to Rally-Raid, one of the most difficult motorsport disciplines in the world. To obtain the best performance in these trials, PEUGEOT Sport chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 2008 DKR, a lubricant of high technology which protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

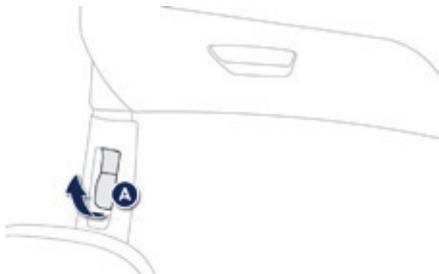
TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D.

Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO₂ emissions and keeps your engine clean.

Bonnet

- !** Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

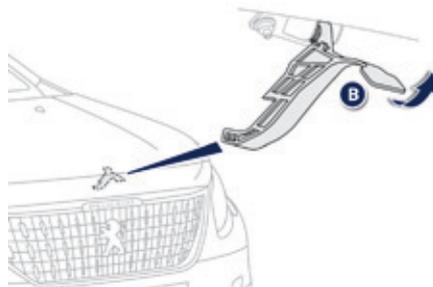
Opening



A. Interior release lever.

- ☞ Open the left hand front door.
- ☞ Pull the release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.

i The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left hand front door is closed.

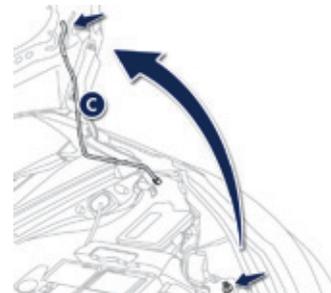


B. Exterior safety catch.

- ☞ Lift the safety catch **B** and raise the bonnet.

! Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns).

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.



C. Bonnet stay.

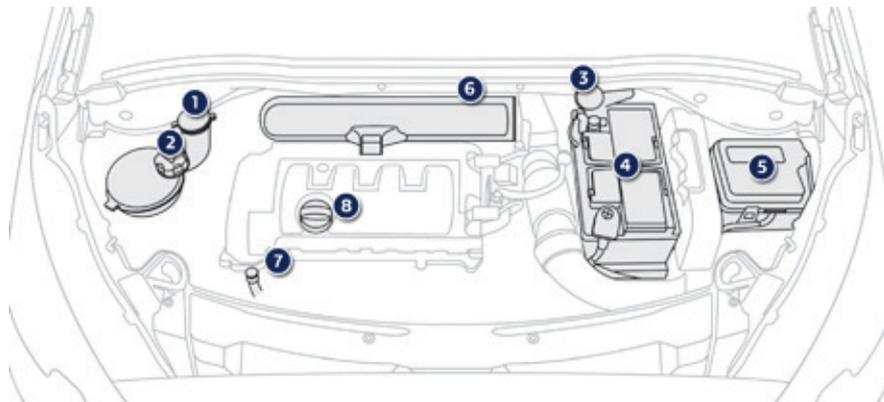
- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay **C** out of its support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay back into its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

Petrol engines

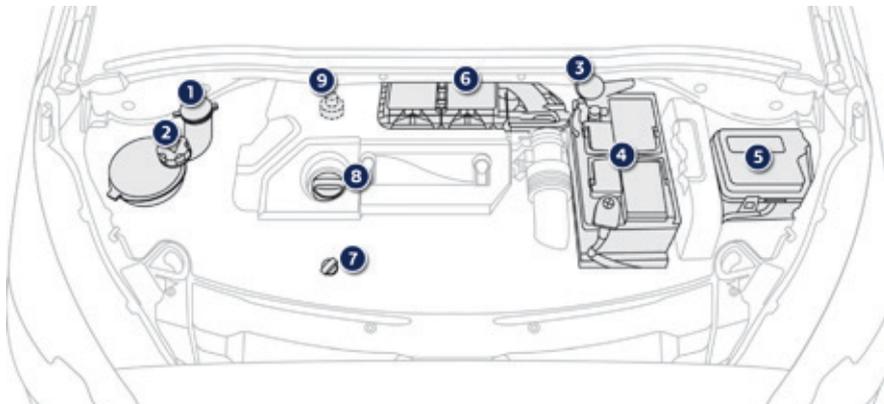
1. Screenwash reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery / Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.



Diesel engines

1. Screenwash reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery / Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Priming pump (depending on engine).

i The AdBlue® tank is located in the boot below the spare wheel and/or the storage well.



Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel (depending on version), or using the dipstick.

It will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

i It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Engine oil change

Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid

Level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.



The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be replaced at routine services.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up the level when necessary.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.

In wintry conditions, it is recommended that you use an ethyl alcohol or methanol based fluid.

Diesel additive

SERVICE A low additive level is indicated by illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the screen (if a display screen is fitted).

Topping-up

This additive must be topped-up by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products

 Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

 Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the warranty and maintenance record and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

When carrying out any operation on the 12 V battery, refer to the corresponding section for details of the precautions to be taken before starting work.



Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.

Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary.**

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed. Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Diesel Particle filter

SERVICE

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a warning message in the screen (if a display screen is fitted). As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.

i On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burnt" smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for the checking interval for this component.

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

General information

Engine characteristics

The engine characteristics (capacity, maximum power, maximum power speed, fuel, CO₂ emissions...) for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These characteristics correspond to the values type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also present on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information on these identification markings, refer to the corresponding section.

For further information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

The gross train weight and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1 000 metres.

The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount.

The recommended nose weight is the vertical load on the towball (removable with or without tools).

GVW: gross vehicle weight, the maximum authorised vehicle weight.

GTW: gross train weight, the maximum authorised weight of vehicle plus trailer.

i High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. Never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) when towing (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

Engines and gearboxes - PETROL

Engine	1.2 litre PureTech 82		1.2 litre PureTech 82 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 110 S&S	
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	ETG5 electronic (5-speed)	ETG5 electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
Model code:	CU	HMZ0 HMZ6	HMZ0/P	HMZ6/PS	HNZ6/S HNVT/S HNZT/S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199		1 199	1 199	1 199
Bore x Stroke (mm)	75 x 90.5		75 x 90.5	75 x 90.5	75 x 90.5
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	60		60	81	81
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 750		5 750	6 250	5 500
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	118		118	205	205
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 750		2 750	1 750	1 500
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.25		3.25	3.5	3.5

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Engines and gearboxes - PETROL

Engine	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.6 litre VTI 120	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)
Model code:	CU	HNYM/S	5FS0
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199	1 598	
Bore x Stroke (mm)	75 x 90,5	77 x 85,8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	94	88	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 000	6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230	160	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	4 250	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.5	4.25	

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Weights and towed loads (in kg) - PETROL

Engine	1.2 litre PureTech 82		1.2 litre PureTech 82 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 110 S&S			
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	ETG5 electronic (5-speed)	ETG5 electronic (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)		
Model code:	CU	HMZ0 HMZ6	HMZ0/P	HMZ6/PS	HNZ6/S	HNVT/S	HNZT/S
- Unladen weight	1 045	1 055	1 055	1 090	1 160	1 150	
- Kerb weight*	1 120	1 130	1 130	1 165	1 235	1 225	
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 582	1 573	1 593	1 656	1 690	1 690	
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 362	2 023	2 043	2 606	2 140	2 640	
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	780	450	450	950	450	950	
- Braked trailer** with load transfer (within the GTW limit)	1 100	770	770	1 270	450	1 250	
- Unbraked trailer	560	450	450	580	450	610	
- Recommended nose weight	51	51	51	51	51	51	

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Weights and towed loads (in kg) - PETROL

Engine		1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.6 litre VTi 120	
Gearbox		Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (4-speed)
Model code:	CU	HNYM/S	5FS0	5FS9
-	Unladen weight	1 160	1 080	1 140
-	Kerb weight*	1 235	1 155	1 215
-	Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 675	1 644	1 666
-	Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 625	2 614	2 616
-	Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	950	970	950
-	Braked trailer** with load transfer (within the GTW limit)	1 270	1 270	1270
-	Unbraked trailer	580	570	600
-	Recommended nose weight	51	51	51

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Engines and gearboxes - DIESEL

Engine	1.6 litre BlueHDi 75	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100		
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)		
Model code:	CU	BHW6	BHYK	BHY6
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560		
Bore x Stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3		
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	55	70		
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 500	3 500		
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	233	254		
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750		
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		
Particle filter	Yes	Yes		
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.75	3.75		

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Engines and gearboxes - DIESEL

Engine	1.6 litre e-HDi 92		1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S		1.6 litre BlueHDi 116** S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	ETG6 electronic (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)		Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	
Model code:	CU	9HP0/S	9HP8/PS	BHYK/S	BHY6/S	BHXM/S	BHZM/S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 560		1 560	1 560	
Bore x Stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	68		70		85	88	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000		3 500		3 500	3 500	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230		254		300	300	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		1 750		1 750	1 750	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	Diesel	
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes		Yes	Yes	
Particle filter	Yes		Yes		Yes	Yes	
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.75		3.75		3.75	3.75	

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

** For BELGIUM.

Weights and towed loads (in kg) - DIESEL

Engine		1.6 litre BlueHDi 75	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100	
Gearbox		Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	
Model code:	CU	BHW6	BHYK	BHY6
-	Unladen weight	1 160	1 180	1 180
-	Kerb weight*	1 235	1 255	1 255
-	Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 680	1 710	1 710
-	Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 300	2 210	2 660
-	Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	620	500	950
-	Braked trailer** with load transfer (within the GTW limit)	940	820	1 270
-	Unbraked trailer	610	500	610
-	Recommended nose weight	51	51	51

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Weights and towed loads (in kg) - DIESEL

Engine		1.6 litre e-HDI 92		1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	
Gearbox		Manual (5-speed)	ETG6 electronic (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	
Model code:	CU	9HP0/S	9HP8/PS	BHYK/S	BHY6/S
-	Unladen weight	1 160	1 170	1 180	1 180
-	Kerb weight*	1 235	1 245	1 255	1 255
-	Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 684	1 692	1 710	1 710
-	Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 634	2 192	2 210	2 660
-	Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	950	500	500	950
-	Braked trailer** with load transfer (within the GTW limit)	1 270	820	820	1 270
-	Unbraked trailer	610	500	500	610
-	Recommended nose weight	38	51	51	51

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Weights and towed loads (in kg) - DIESEL

Engine	1.6 litre BlueHDi 116*** S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code:	BHXM/S	BHZM/S
	CU	
- Unladen weight		1 200
- Kerb weight*		1 275
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)		1 726
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient		2 706
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient		980
- Braked trailer** with load transfer (within the GTW limit)		1 300
- Unbraked trailer		620
- Recommended nose weight		51

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

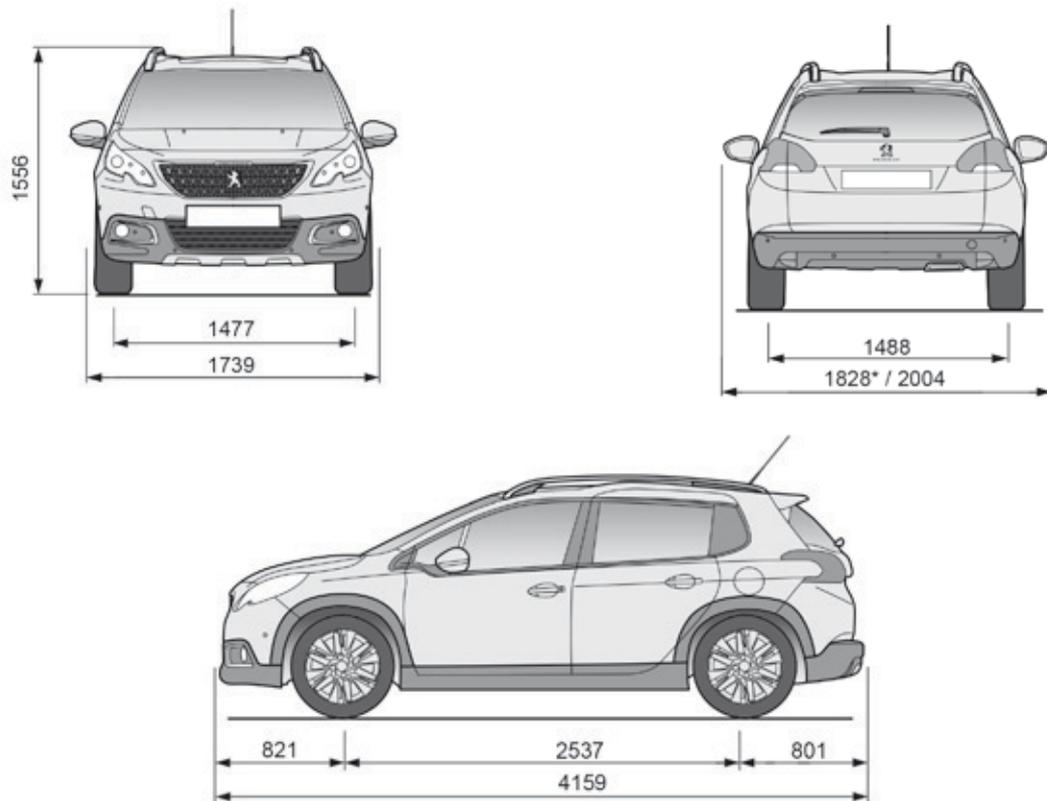
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

*** For BELGIUM.



Dimensions (in mm)



* Mirrors folded.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

B. Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the middle pillar, on the passenger's side.

D. Tyre/paint label.

This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

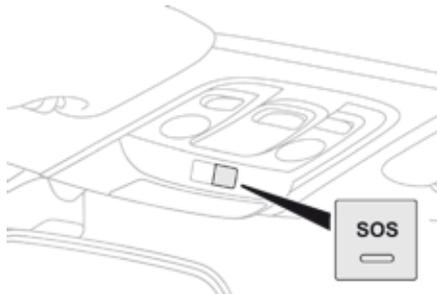
It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

i The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

🍀 Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency call



* Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

PEUGEOT Connect SOS

Test of operation of the system:

SOS



The green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds when the ignition is switched on, signifying that a call can be made.

SOS



Contact a PEUGEOT dealer if the orange indicator lamp comes on:

- flashing, then off: the system has a fault.
- on fixed: the back-up battery must be replaced.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.



The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Operation: "Emergency call".

Pressing this button for more than 2 seconds starts a call to the PEUGEOT Connect SOS centre.

- The green indicator lamp flashes.
- A voice message confirms that the call is being dealt with.

The green indicator lamp on fixed indicates that communication has been established. It goes off at the end of the communication.

The "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" centre immediately locates your vehicle, communicates in your language*, and depending on the circumstances, makes a call to the appropriate public emergency services*.

Conditions for use:

- In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location. **112** is the telephone number reserved for emergency calls and is accepted throughout the European Union.
- "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" is subject to the terms and conditions for the service available from dealers, and to technological and technical limitations.

Inadvertent press:

- pressing brings on the green indicator lamp.
- pressing again immediately cancels the call. A voice message confirms the cancellation.
- if the call connects, explain to the contact that it was a mistake. The green indicator lamp goes off at the end of the call.

Assistance call

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance

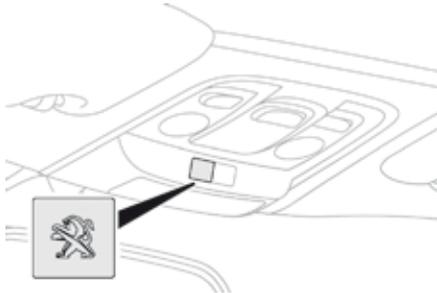


In the event of a breakdown, pressing for more than 2 seconds starts the call.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made.

Inadvertent press:

- pressing again immediately cancels the call. A voice message confirms the cancellation.



If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.



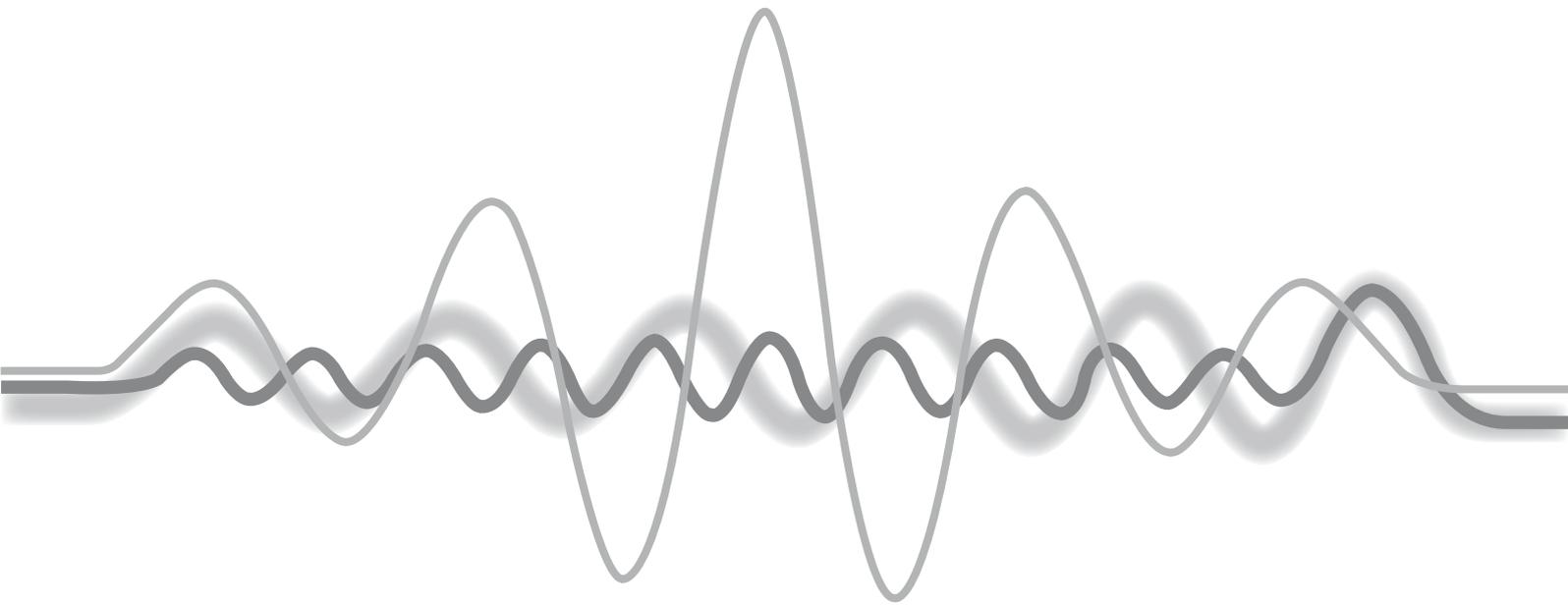
If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.



For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to update the vehicle's on-board telematic system.



If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyPEUGEOT personal space, via the PEUGEOT Internet website in your country, accessible on www.peugeot.co.uk.



7-inch touch screen

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



	Contents
First steps	258
Steering mounted controls	260
Menus	261
Navigation	262
Navigation - Guidance	270
Traffic	274
Radio Media	276
Radio	282
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	284
Media	286
Settings	290
Connected services	298
Internet browser	299
MirrorLink™	302
CarPlay®	306
Telephone	310
Frequently asked questions	318

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

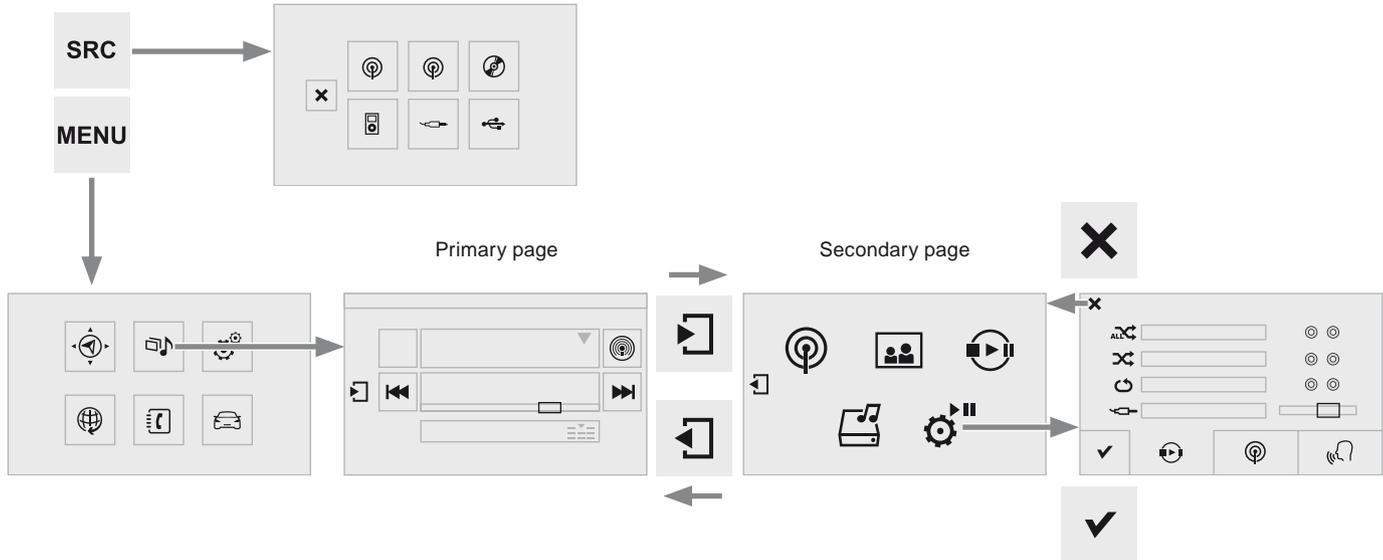
! As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby. Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

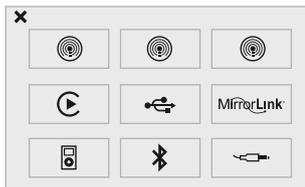
Use the buttons to the left of the touch screen for access to the menu carousels, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



i In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

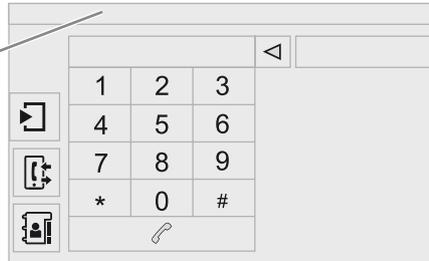


Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selection of audio source (depending on version):

- FM /DAB* /AM stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player (located in the glove box)*.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and with Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).
- Jukebox*, after first copying audio files to the internal memory of the system.



MENU

Press on **Menu** to display the menu carousel.

SRC

Press on **SRC** to display the audio sources carousel.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.

With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

i The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised. The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

! To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product. Do not use pointed objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls



Press: mute on / off.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Change audio source: radio, media.



Radio, rotate: automatic search for the previous / next station.
Radio, press: preset stations.
Media, rotate: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.



Telephone: start or answer a call.
Call in progress: telephone menu (end call, secret mode, hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than call in progress, telephone menu.
Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

Menus



Navigation

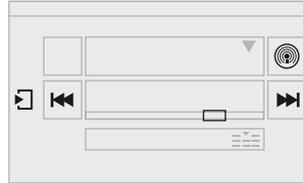
(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.



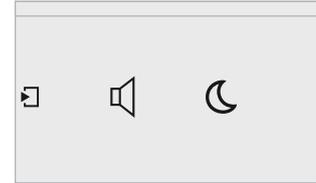
Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



Settings

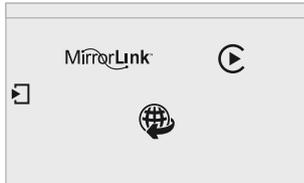


Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).



Connected services

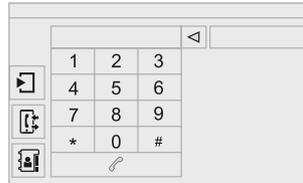
(Depending on equipment)



Connect using the "Internet browser". Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.



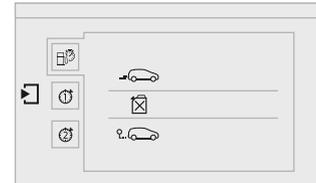
Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

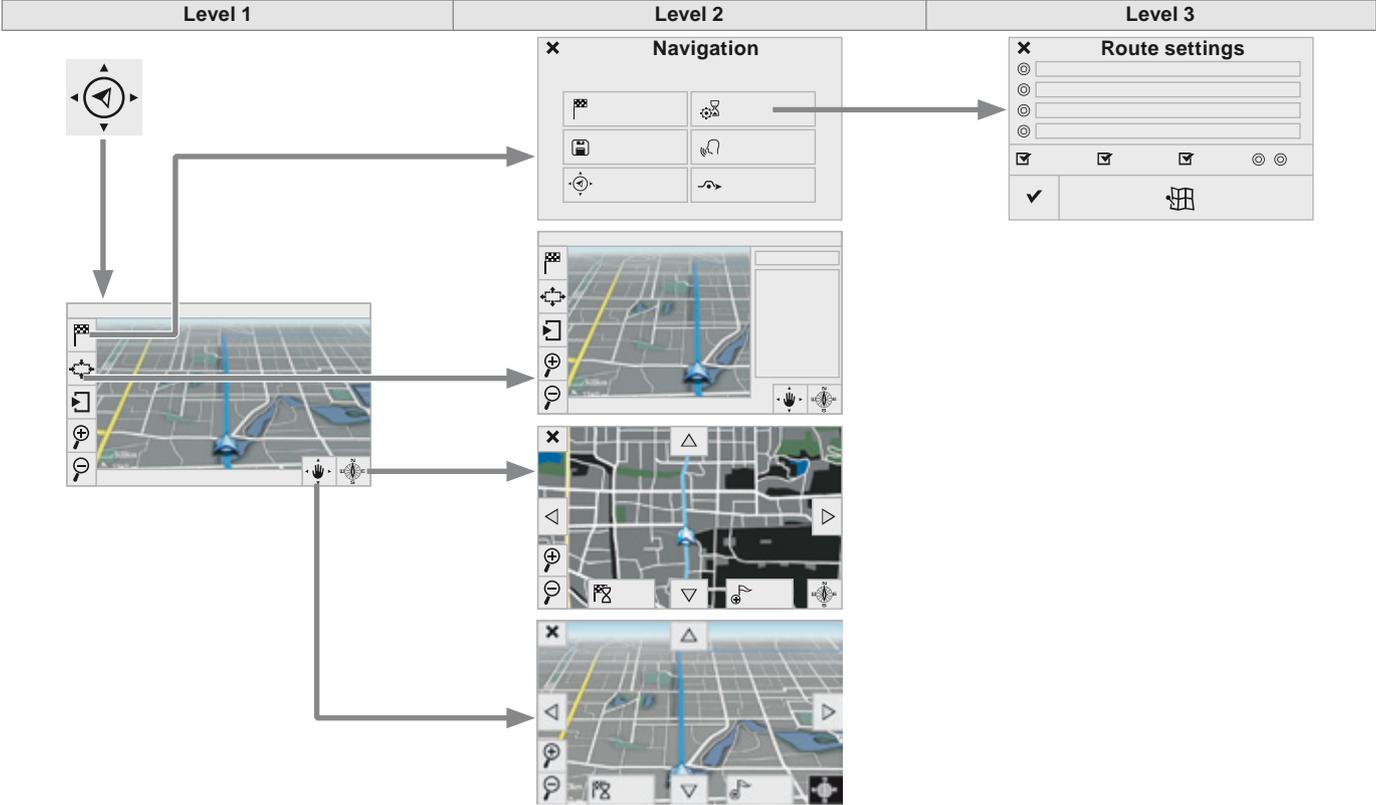


Driving



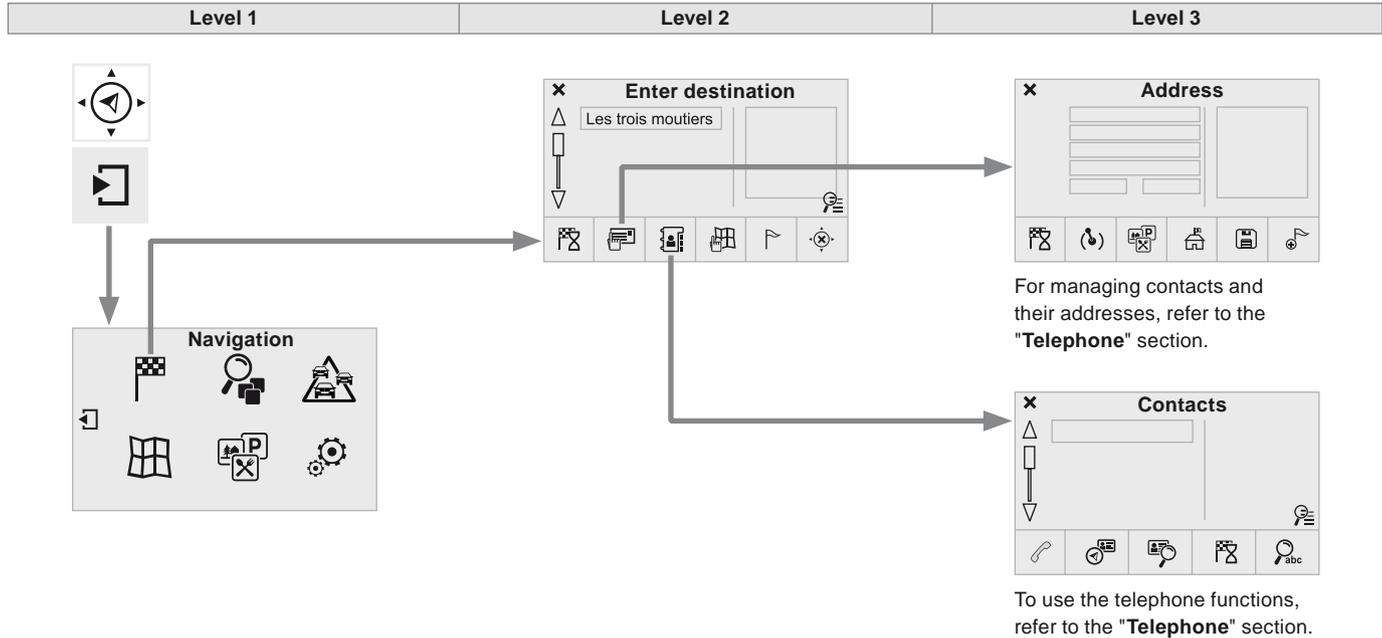
Access to the trip computer. Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation

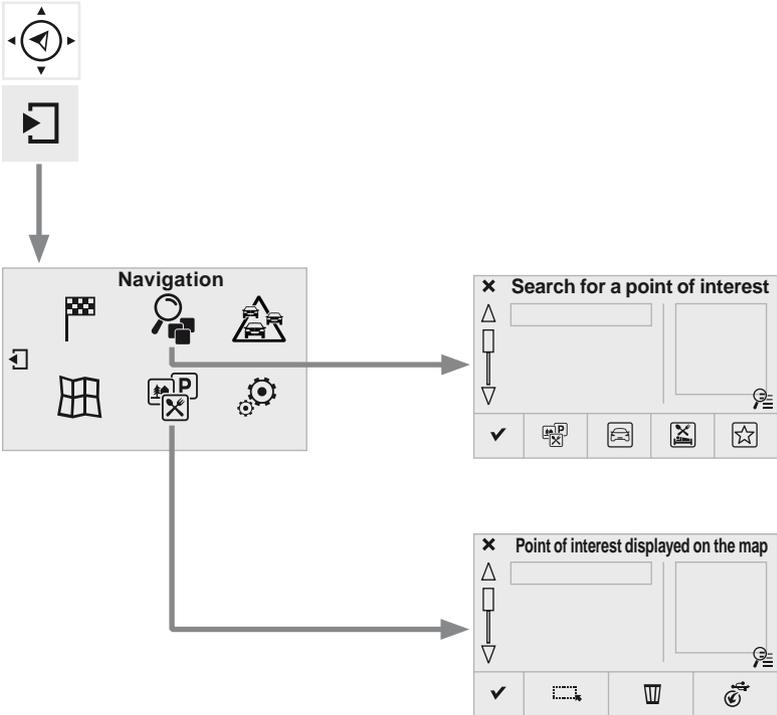


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments	
 	Navigation ↓ Settings ↓ Navigation		Enter destination			Display recent destinations.	
			Route settings	<input type="radio"/>	Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.	
				<input type="radio"/>	Shortest		
				<input type="radio"/>	Time/distance		
				<input type="radio"/>	Ecological		
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Tolls		
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Ferries		
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Traffic		
					Strict-Close		
					Show route on map		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Confirm	Save the options.					
	Save current location			Save the current address.			
	Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.			
	Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.			
	Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.			
	Navigation				Display in text mode.		
					Zoom in.		
					Zoom out.		
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.	
					Switch to 2D map.		

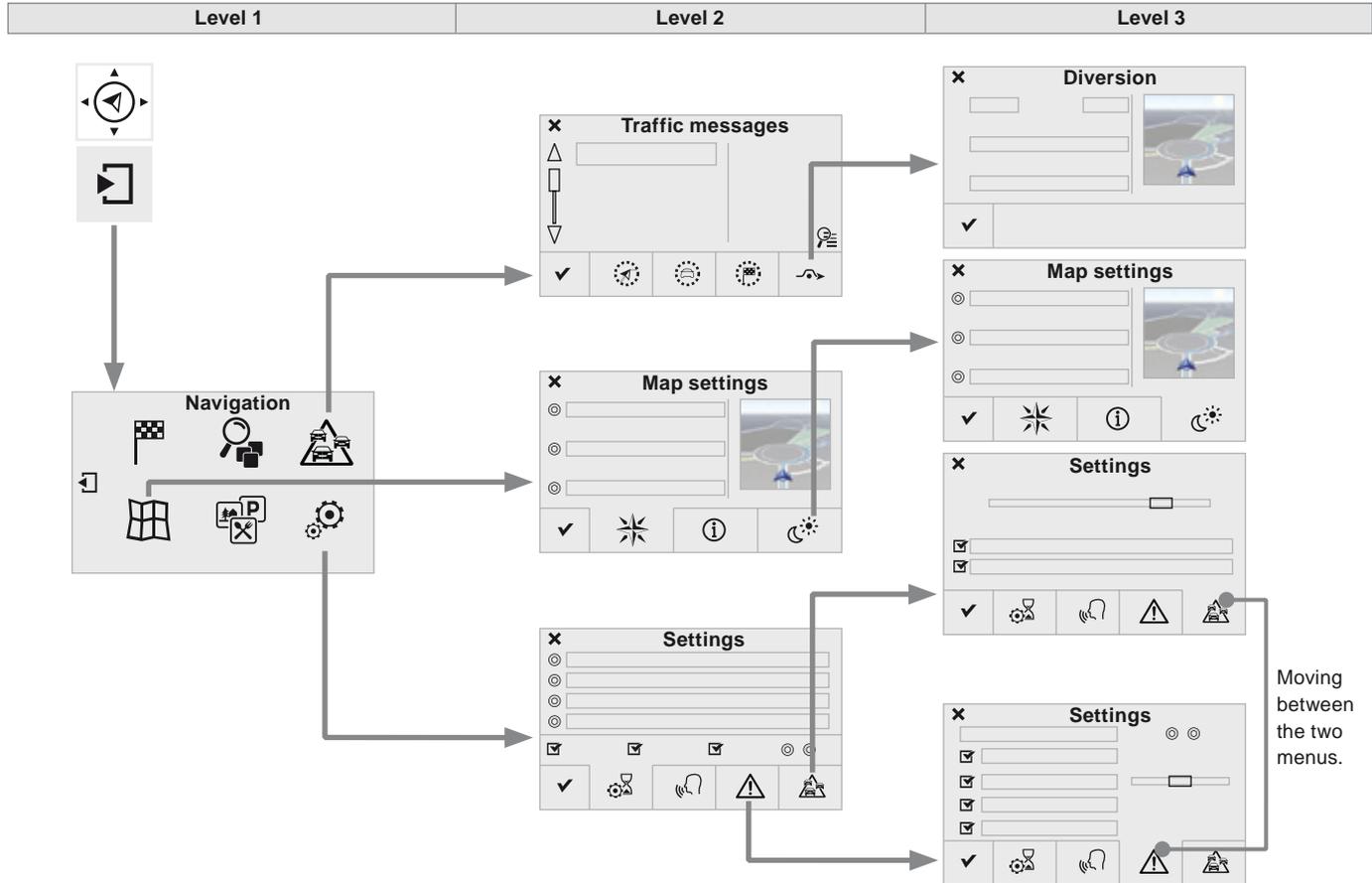




Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	<p style="text-align: center;"> Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Enter destination </p>		Address	 Current loc.	Address settings	
				 Point of interest		
				 Town center		
				 Save	Save the current address.	
				 Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.	
				 Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.	
			Contacts	 Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.	
				 View		
				 Navigate to		
				 Search for contact		
 Call						
	On the map	Display the map and zoom to view the roads.				
	Itinerary	Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.				
	Stop	Delete navigation information.				
	Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.				



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	Navigation	 All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.	
	↓	 Motor			
	Secondary page	 Dining/hotels			
	↓	 Personal			
Search for POI	 Search		Save the settings.		
  	Navigation	 Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.	
	↓	 Delete			
	Secondary page	 Import POIs			
	↓	 Confirm		Save the options.	
Show POIs					



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Navigation	 On the route				Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Secondary page	 Around vehicle				
	Traffic messages	 Near destination				
		 Detour	<input type="radio"/> Detour over a distance			
		 Recalculate route	<input type="radio"/> Recalculate route			
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Finish				Save your selections.	
  	Navigation	 Orientation	<input type="radio"/> Flat view north heading			Choose the display and orientation of the map.
	Secondary page		<input type="radio"/> Flat view vehicle heading			
	Map settings		<input type="radio"/> Perspective view			
		 Maps				
		 Aspect	<input type="radio"/> "Day" map colour			
			<input type="radio"/> "Night" map colour			
	<input type="radio"/> Automatic day/night					
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm				Save the settings.	
  	Navigation	 Route settings			Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.	
	Secondary page	 Voice				
	Settings	 Alarm!				
		 Traffic options				
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm				Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



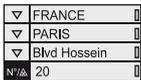
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Select the "**Country:**" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**".
Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry. The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".

Or



Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact



To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



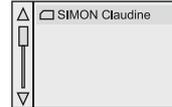
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude**:" then the "**Latitude**:".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**".

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

i An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you. You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month. The detailed procedure is available on: <http://peugeot.navigation.com>.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",



"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.



Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Traffic options**".



Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.



Select "**Confirm**".



We recommend a filter radius of:

- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Voice**".

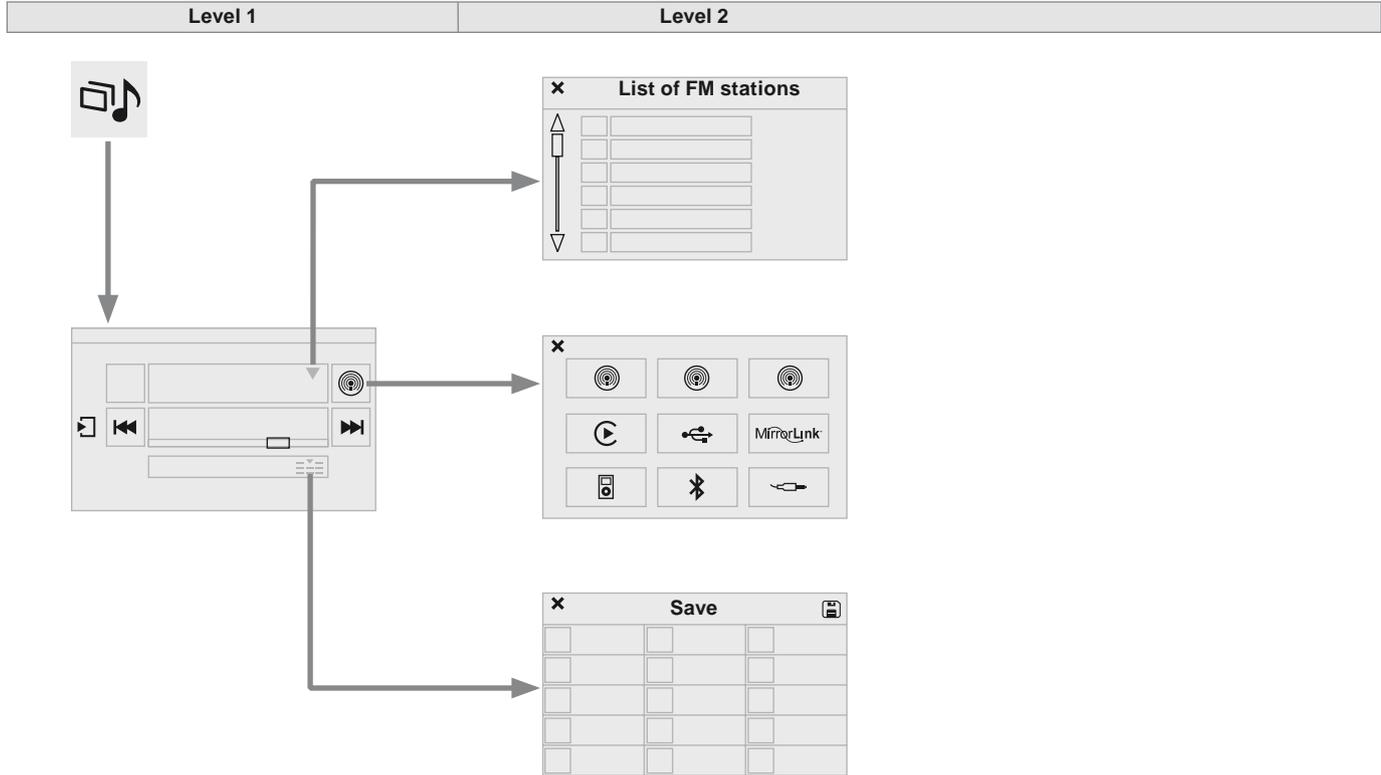
Off On

Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

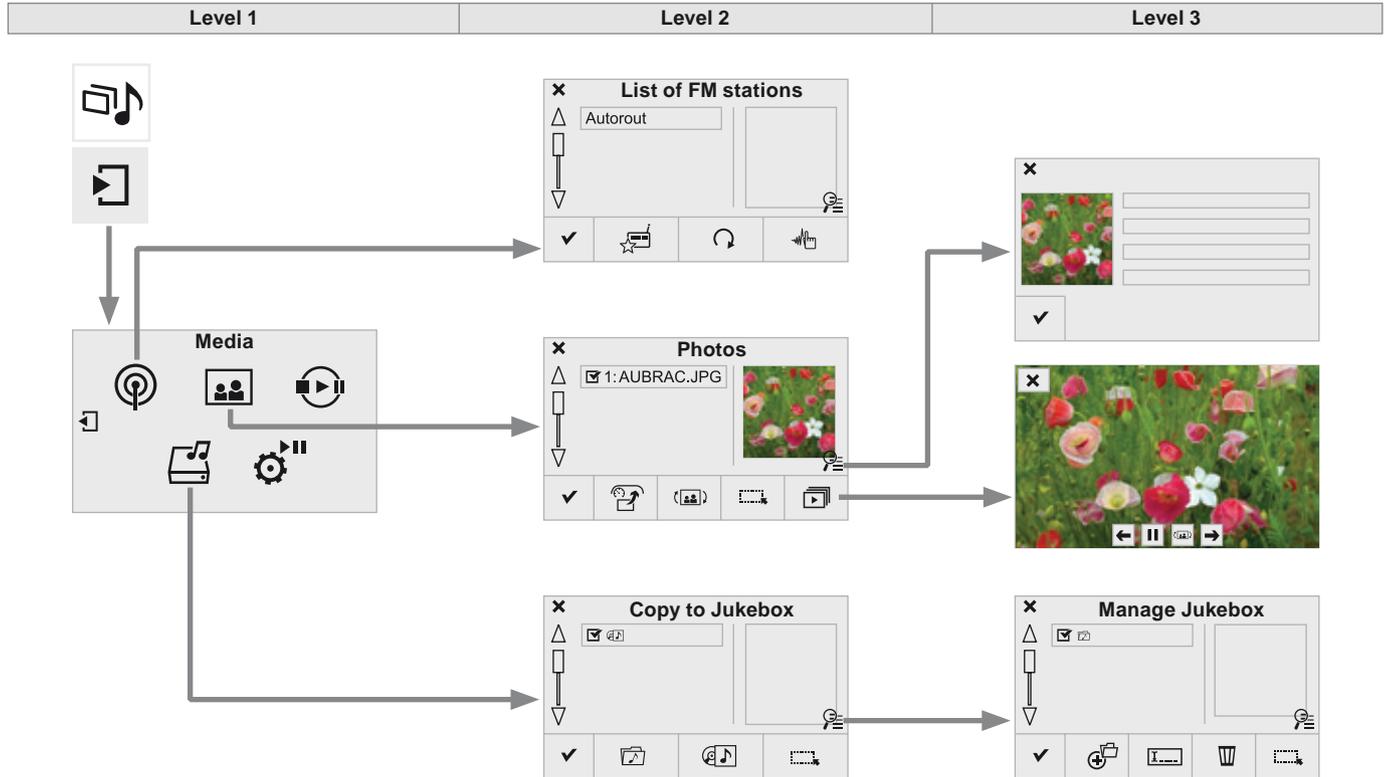


The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

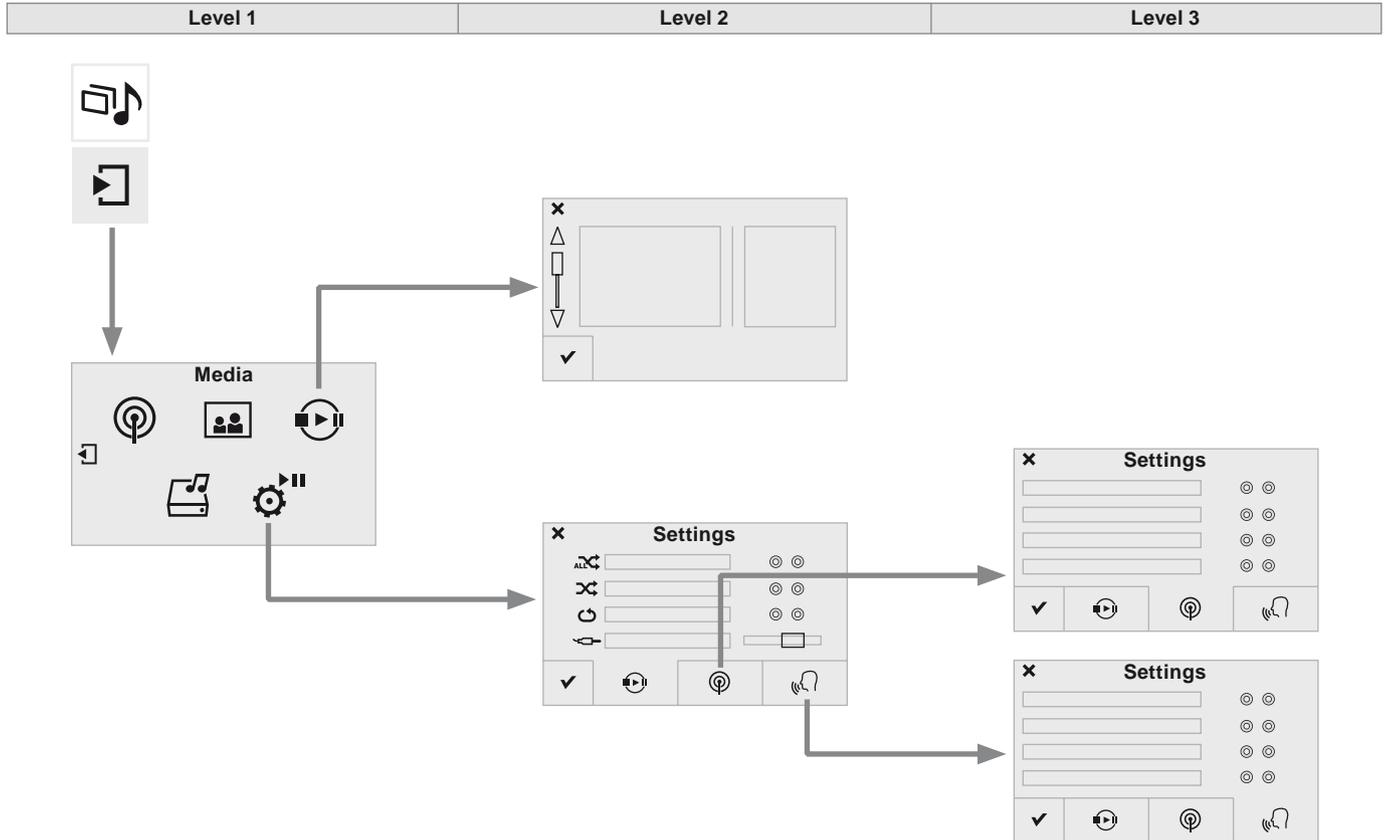
Radio Media



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	Radio Media ↓ List		List of FM stations	Press on a radio station to select it.
 	Radio Media ↓ Source	 FM Radio  DAB Radio  AM Radio  USB  CD  MirrorLink™  CarPlay®  iPod  Bluetooth  AUX  Jukebox	Select change of source.	
 	Radio Media ↓ Save			Press an empty location to Save it.



	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments		
  	Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Radio list	 Save  Update list  Frequency  Confirm		Press a radio station to select it. Update the list of stations received. Enter the desired radio frequency. Save the settings.		
	  	Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Photos	 Home screen  Rotate  Select all  Slideshow  Full screen	 Previous photo.  Pause / Play.  Next photo.	Display the selected photo in the home page. Rotate the photo 90°. Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect. Display the photos in sequence, full screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.	
		  	Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Manage Jukebox	 Sort by folder  Sort by album  Select all  Copy  Magnifying glass	 Create folder  Rename  Delete  Select all  Confirm	Choose a selection mode. Copy files to the Jukebox. Choose the desired function. Save the settings.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Media list					Presentation of the last media used.
  	Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Settings		Media ↓ Settings	 Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.	
				 Shuffle (current album)		
				 Repeat		
				 Aux. amplification		
			Radio ↓ Settings	<input type="checkbox"/> RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.	
				<input type="checkbox"/> DAB/FM station tracking		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Display Radio Text		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Digital radio slideshow display		
			Announcements ↓ Settings	<input type="checkbox"/> Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.	
				<input type="checkbox"/> News - Weather		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Sport - Programm info		
				<input type="checkbox"/> Flash - Unforeseen events		
	Confirm				Save the settings.	



Radio

Selecting a station

 Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

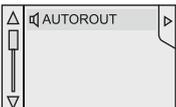
 Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

 Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

 Press on the secondary page.

 Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

 Select a radio station from the list offered.

 Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

 Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

 Select "**Save**".

 **Mémorial 1** Select a preset radio station in the list.

 If necessary, select change of source.

 Select "**FM Radio**".

Or

 "**AM Radio**".

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

 Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

 107.7 MHz

By automatic frequency search



Press **◀** or **▶** to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN

 Select change source.

 Select "**FM Radio**".

Or

 "**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



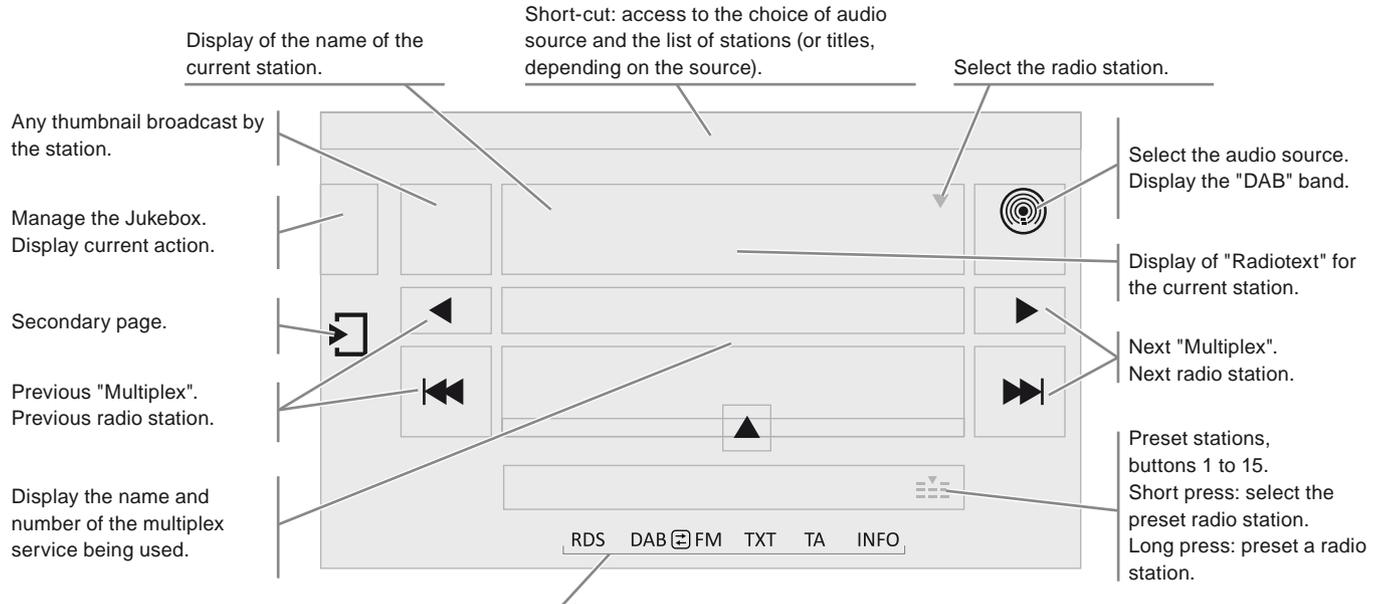
Select "**Radio**".

Off On

Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

i If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.



! Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems. It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics. This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

- !** Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

- i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".

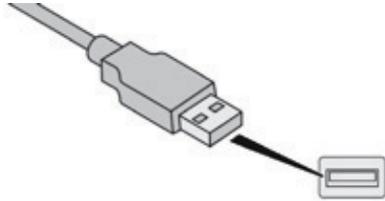


Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

- i** If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

- !** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB player



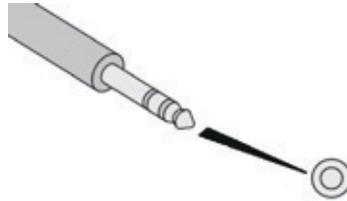
Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Choose the source.

SRC

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.



Press on **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and. mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4,...) can be played. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).



The system does not support the simultaneous connection of two identical devices (two memory sticks, two Apple® players) but it is possible to connect one memory stick and one Apple® player at the same time.



It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.



The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied. Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

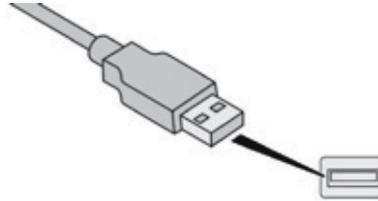
Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Managing the Jukebox

Connect the device (MP3 player...) to the USB port or auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable audio cable.

i When no audio file is copied to the system, which has a capacity of 8 GB, all of the Jukebox function symbols are greyed and are not available.



Select "**Media list**".



Select copy "**Copy Jukebox**".



Select "**Sort by folder**".

Or



"**Sort by album**".



Select the magnifying glass to enter the folder or album and select audio file by audio file.



Select "**Confirm**" then "**Copy**".



Select "**New folder**" to create a folder structure in the Jukebox.

Or

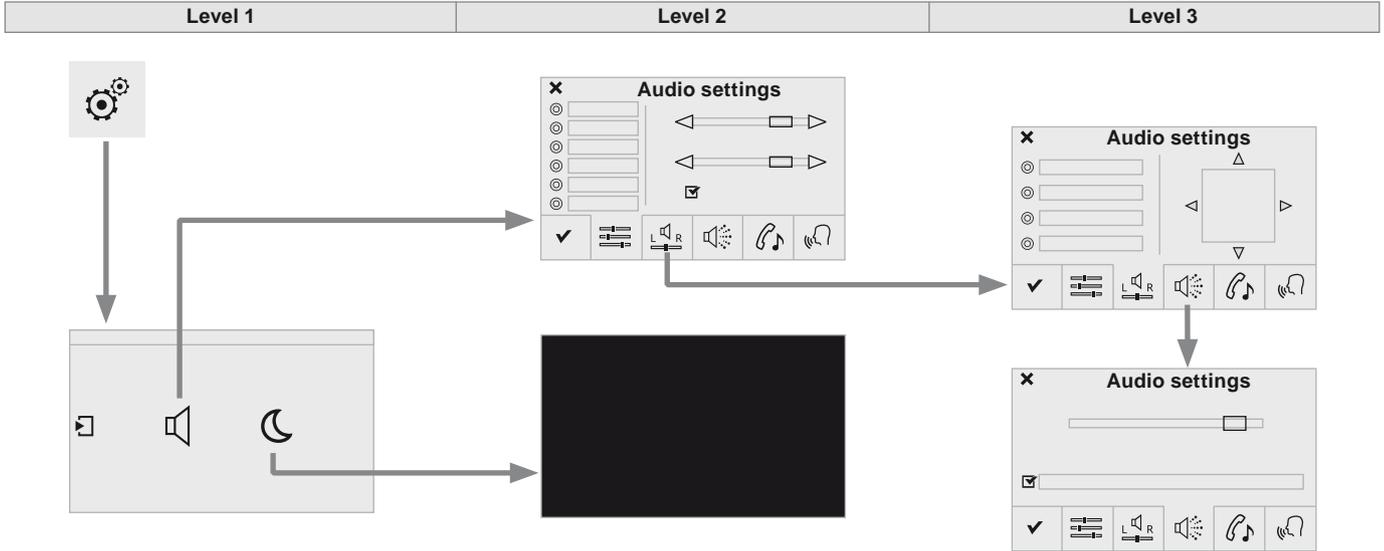


Select "**Keep structure**" to retain the structure from the device.

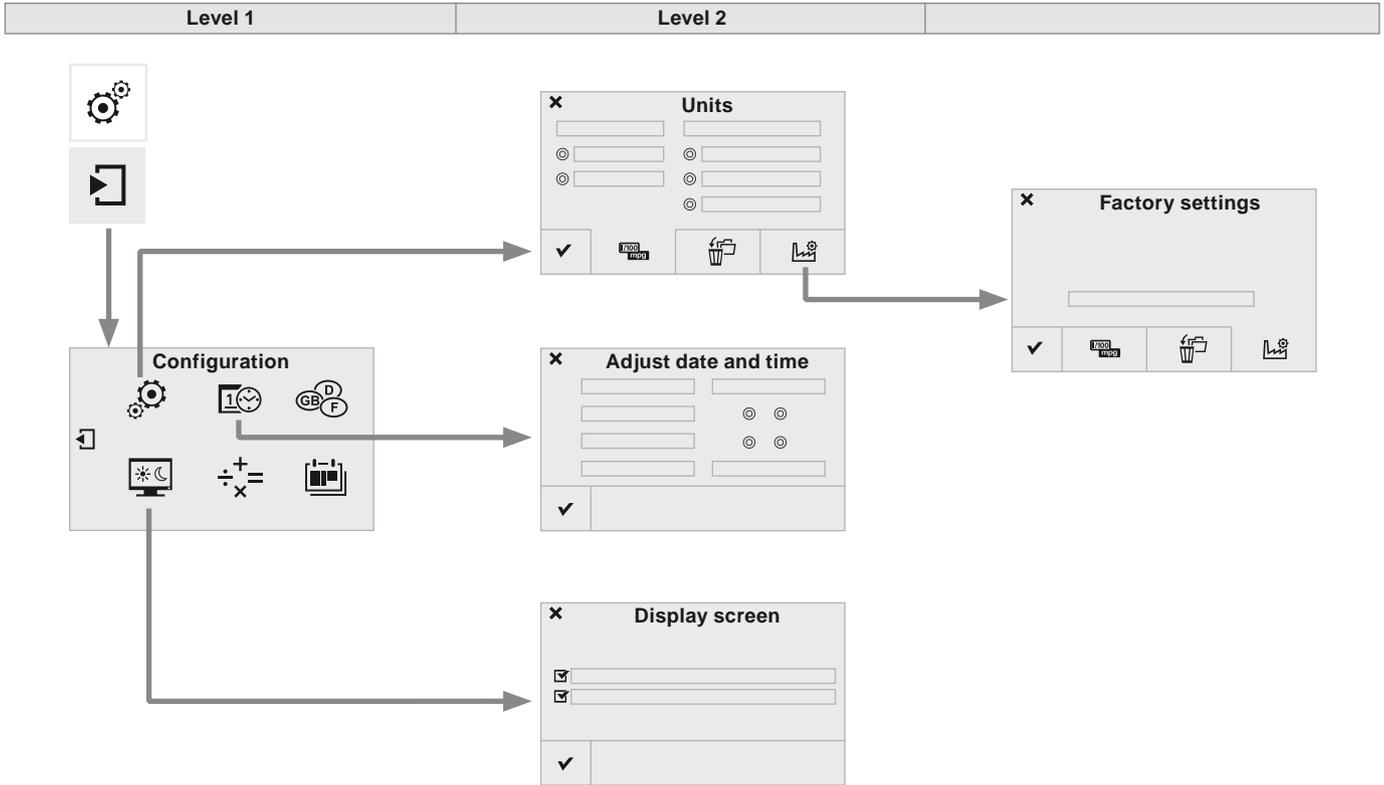


While copying the system returns to the primary page; you can go back to the copy view at any time by selecting this button.

Settings



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
 	Settings ↓ Audio settings		Ambience		Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance		Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects		Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones		Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice		Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.
			Confirm		Save your settings.
 	Settings ↓ Turn off screen				Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
  	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ System Settings	 Units	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.	
		 Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.	
		 Factory settings	Return to factory settings.	
		✓ Confirm	Save the settings.	
  	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Time/Date	✓ Confirm	Set the date and time then confirm.	
  	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Screen settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Activate automatic text scrolling	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Activate animations				
✓ Confirm				

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
  	<p>Settings</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Languages</p>	✓	Confirm	Select the language then confirm.
  	<p>Settings</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Calculator</p>			Select the calculator.
  	<p>Settings</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Calendar</p>			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**".

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

i The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble**: and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source. The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

- i**
- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiances)
 - "**Bass**:"
 - "**Treble**:"
 - "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
 - "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
 - "**Audible response from touch screen**"
 - "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.



Select "**Languages**" to change language.

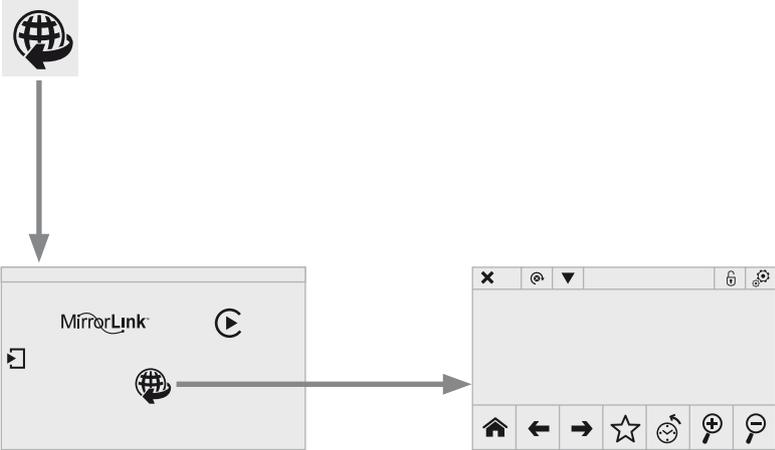


Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services



Internet browser



Press on **Connected services** to display the primary page.

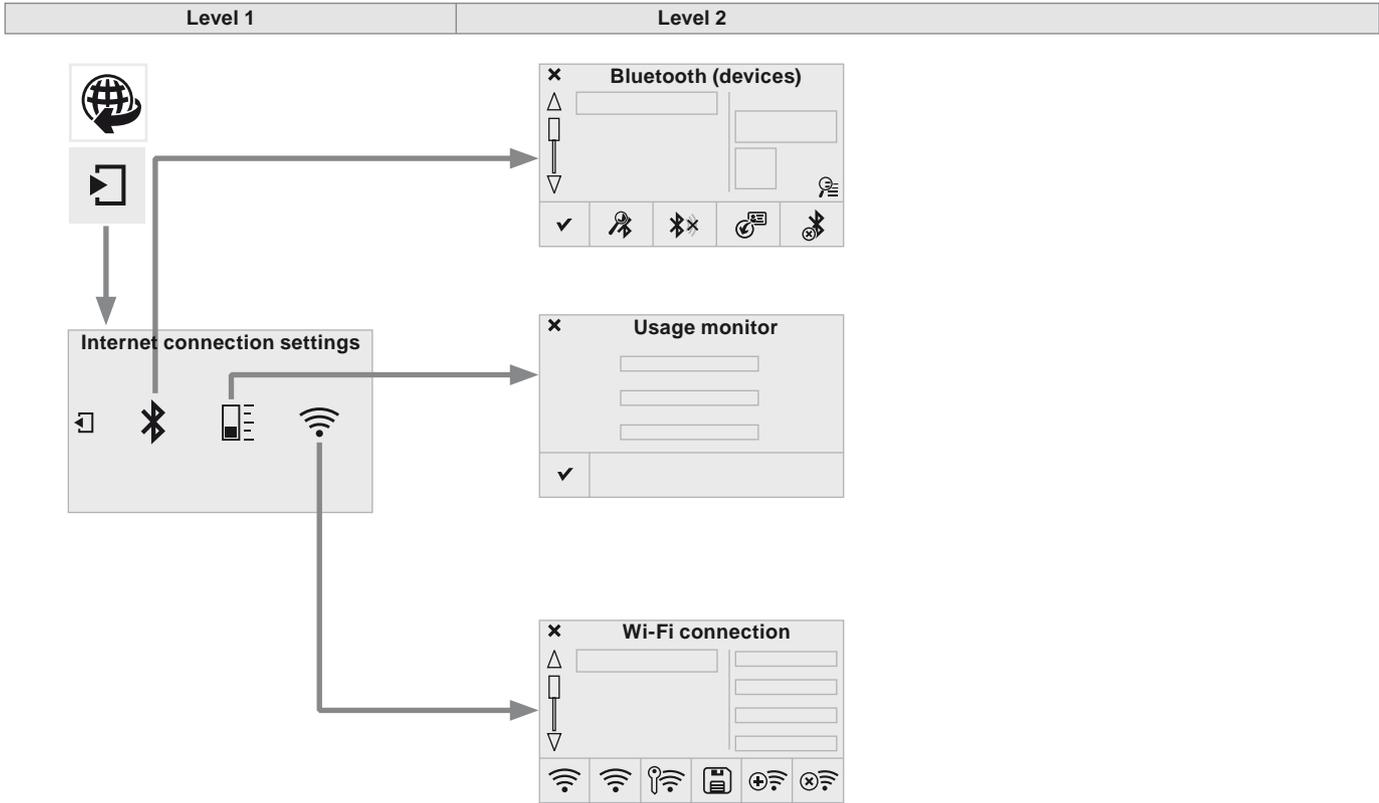


Press on "**Internet browser**" to display the browser home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, "Internet" option, see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

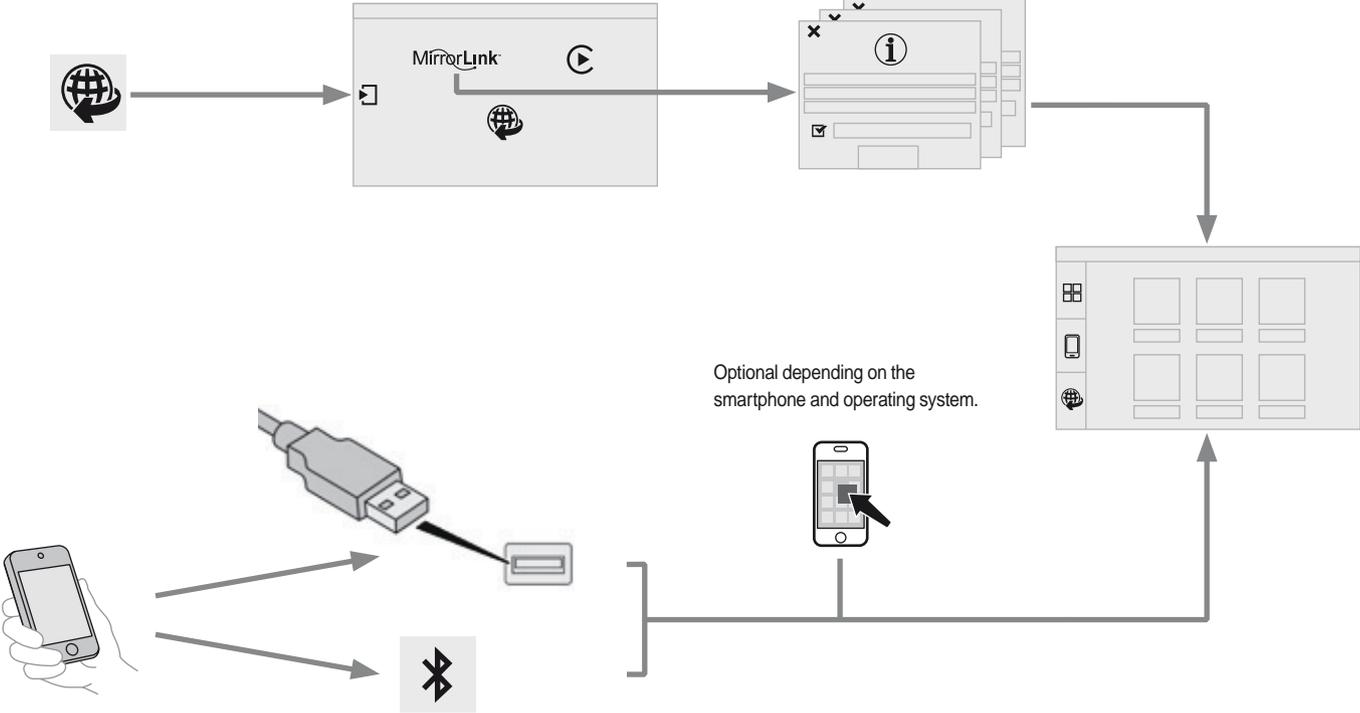


Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
  	Connected services ↓ Secondary page ↓ Bluetooth connections	 Search	Start the search for a device to connect.	
		 Connect /Disconnect	Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.	
		 Update	Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.	
		 Delete	Delete the selected telephone.	
		 Confirm	Save the settings.	
  	Connected services ↓ Secondary page ↓ Transfer rate	Reset	Reset the usage monitor, then confirm.	
		 Confirm		
  	Connected services ↓ Secondary page ↓ Wi-Fi connection	 All	Display all Wi-Fi networks.	
		 Secure	Display secure Wi-Fi networks.	
		 Remember	Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).	
		 Add	Add a new Wi-Fi network.	
		 On/ Off	Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.	
		 Connect	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.	

MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen. The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i Please note:

- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and end the connection.

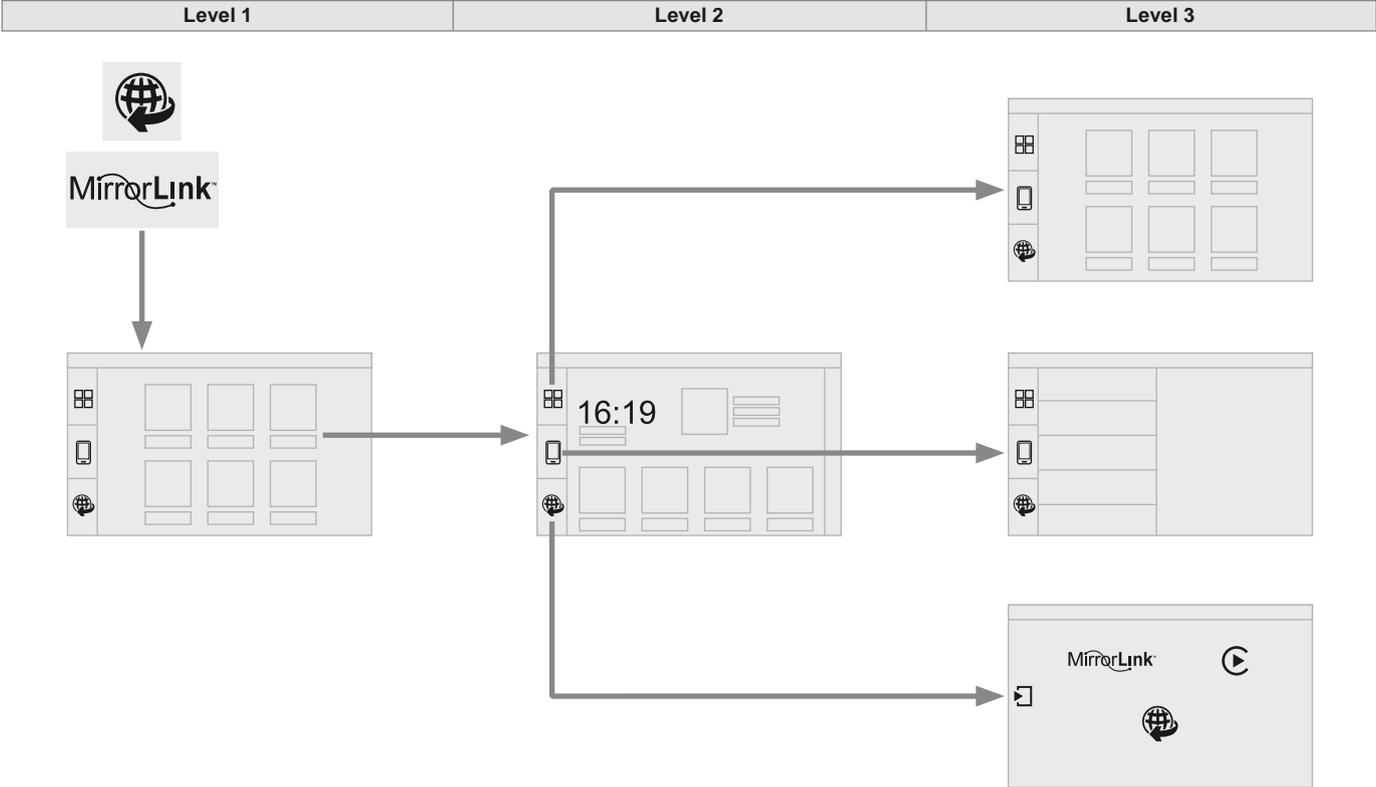
Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology. If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

Voice recognition

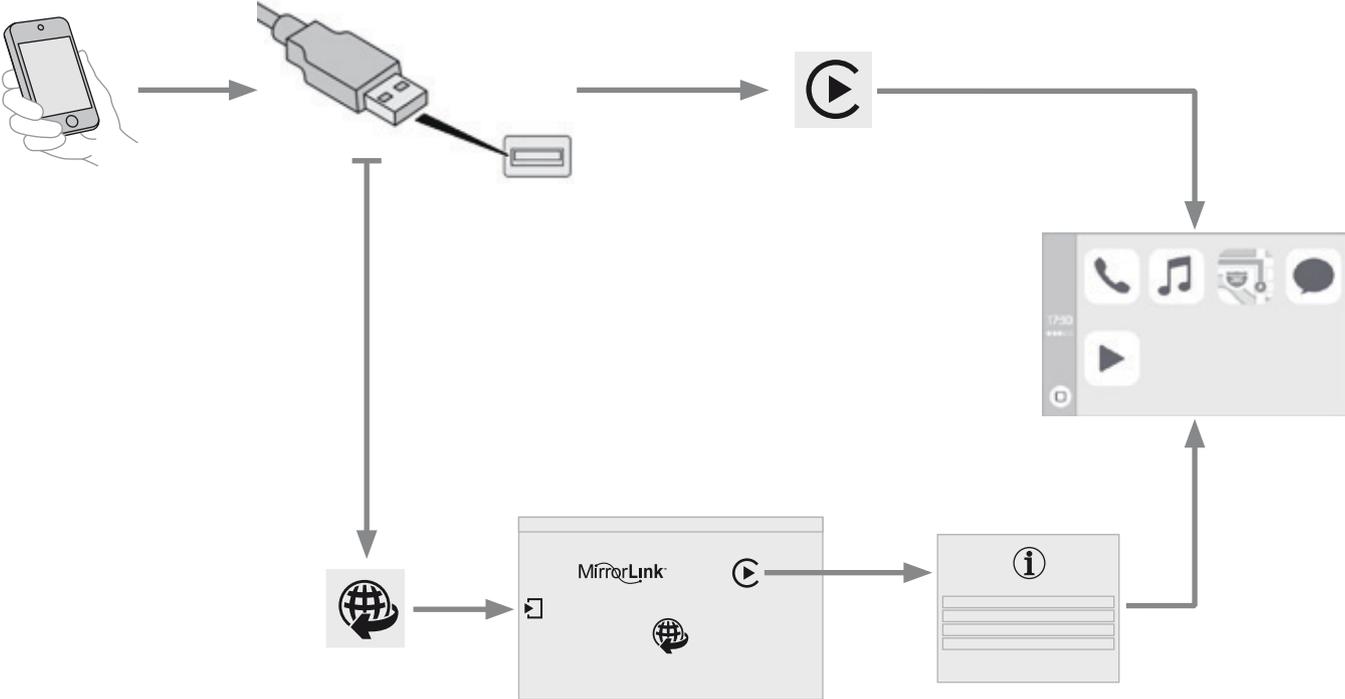
Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<p>Connected services</p> <p>↓</p> <p>MirrorLink™</p>					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay[®]



CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen. As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

i As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the "**Telephone**" function changes to "**CarPlay**" in the menu carousel. Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

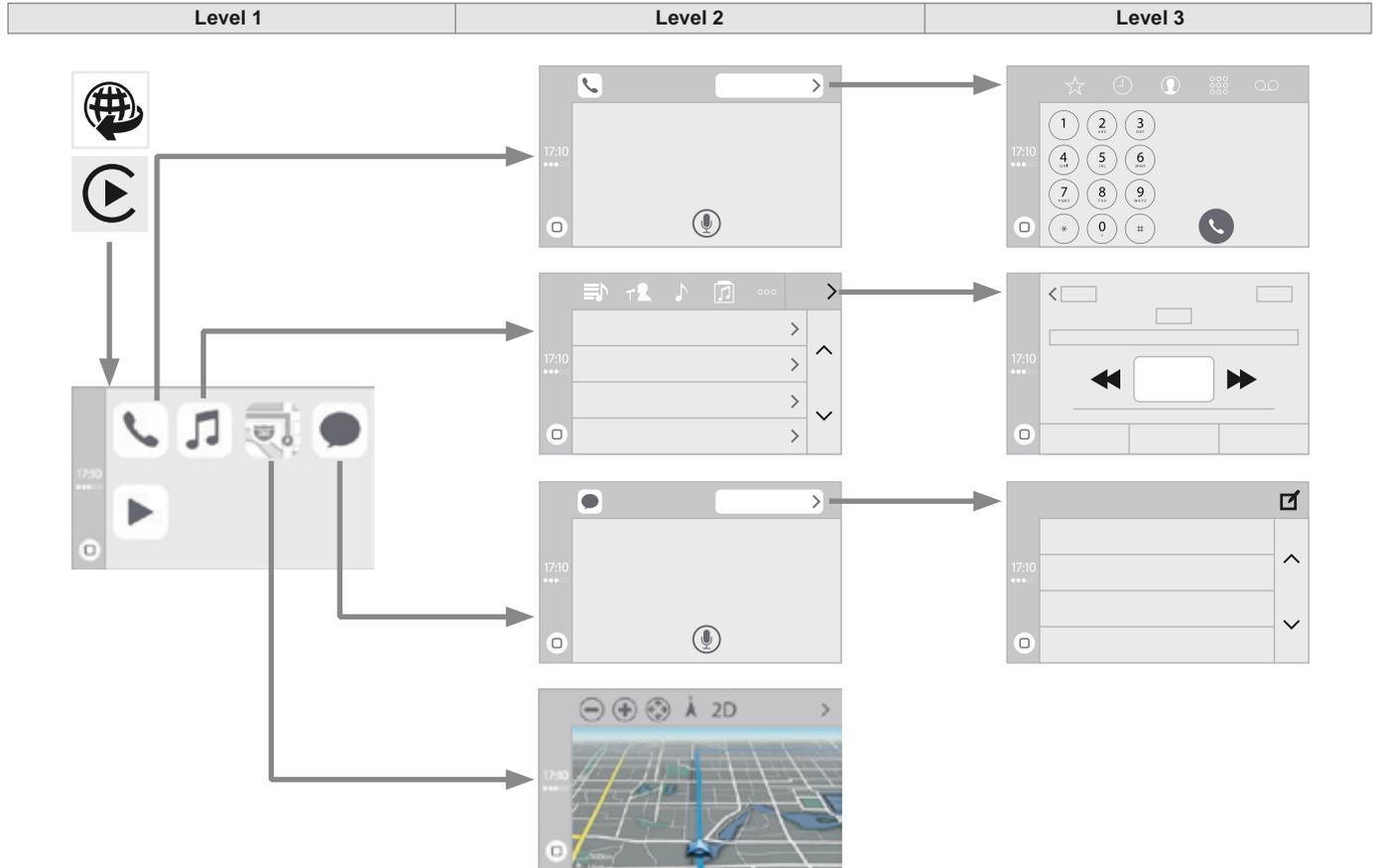


Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

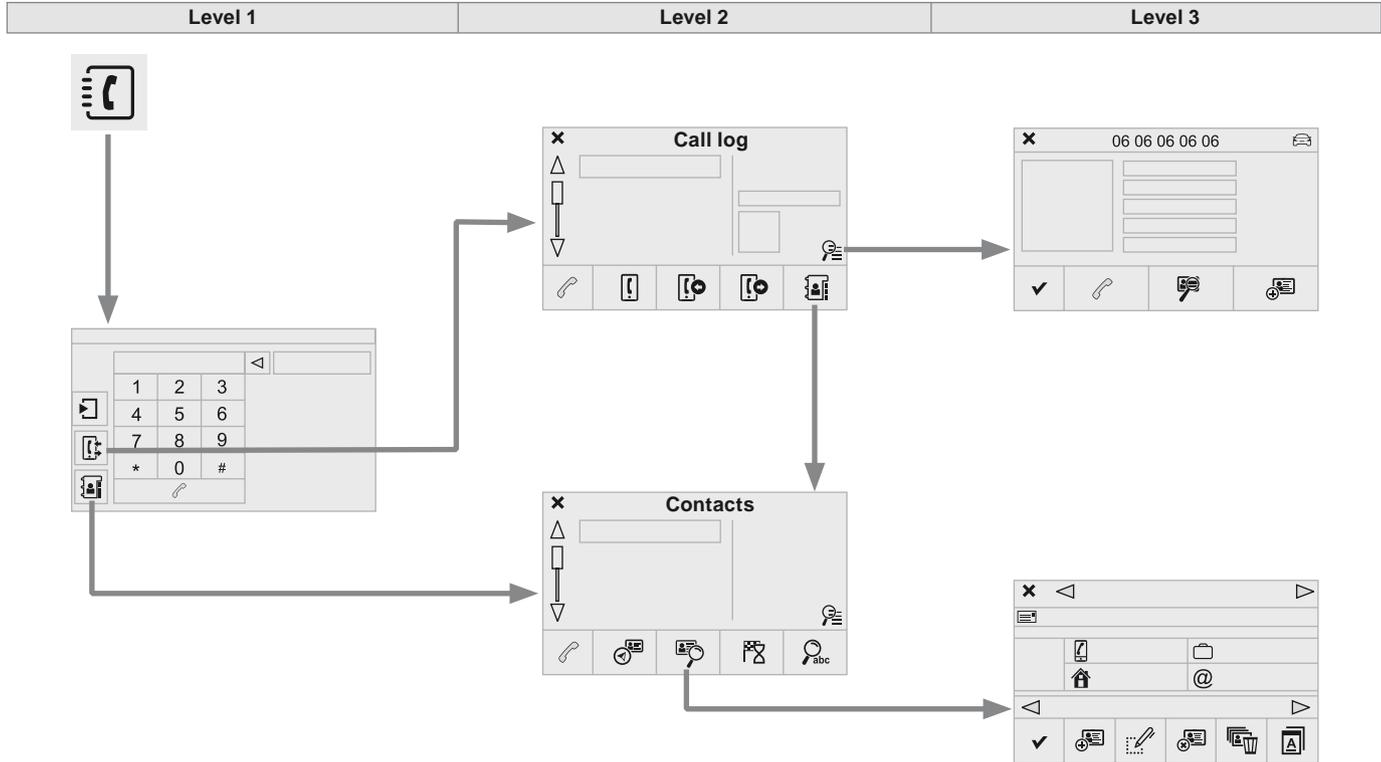
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

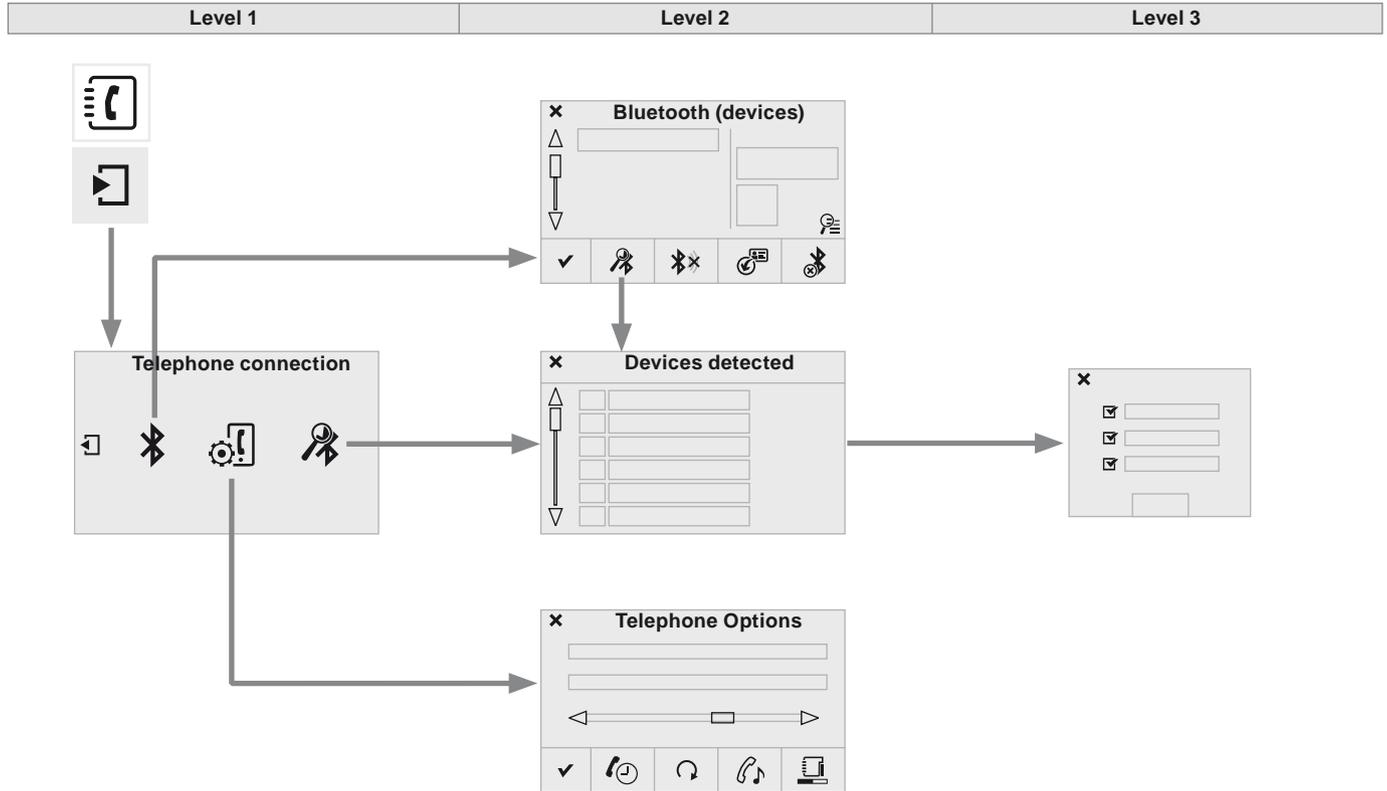


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 Connected services  Apple® CarPlay®	 Telephone	☆	Favourites	The "Telephone" function is placed automatically in "Siri" voice mode. Press on "Display contacts" for access to the telephone menus.		
		🕒	Calls			
		👤	Contacts			
		☰☰☰☰	Keypad			
		🗨️	Messages			
	 Music	📁	Lists	Press on "Music" to browse and select the tracks on your smartphone. Press on "Playing" for access to the track currently playing.		
		👤	Artists			
		🎵	Tracks			
		📀	Albums			
	 Plan	>	Destinations	Press on "Destinations" to search for an address by "Siri" voice command or by using the keypad. The GPS function is through the telephone's 3G, 4G or Wi-Fi internet connection.		
		 Messages	>	Display messages	The "Messages" function is place automatically in "Siri" voice mode to speak the message and the addressee. Press on "Display messages" for access to the messages.	
	▶		Playing		Access to the track currently playing.	

Telephone



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<p>Telephone ↓ Call log</p>	 All calls				After making choices, start the call.
		 Incoming calls				
		 Outgoing calls				
		 Contacts				
		 Magnifying glass	 View			
			 Create			
 Call						
 	<p>Telephone ↓ Contacts</p>	 Addresses				After making choices, start the call.
		 View	 Create			
			 Modify			
			 Delete			
			 Delete all			
			 By name			
			 Confirm			
		 Navigate to				
 Search for contact						
 Call						



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Bluetooth connection	 Search				Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
		 Connect / Disconnect				Start or stop the Bluetooth connection to the selected peripheral device.
		 Update				Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
		 Delete				Delete the selected telephone.
		 Confirm				Save the settings.
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for devices			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
		Devices detected		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Audio streaming	
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Internet	
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Telephone Options	 Put on hold				Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
		 Update				Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
		 Ringtones				Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
		 Memory info.				Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth contacts.
		 Confirm				Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

✓ Enter this same code in the system, select **"OK"** and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search for devices"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and **"Confirm"**.



Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then **"Confirm"**.

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
 - in **"Audio streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
 - in **"Internet"** (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth standard).
- Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad. Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Managing contacts / entries



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of route settings.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).	
	The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf...).	Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

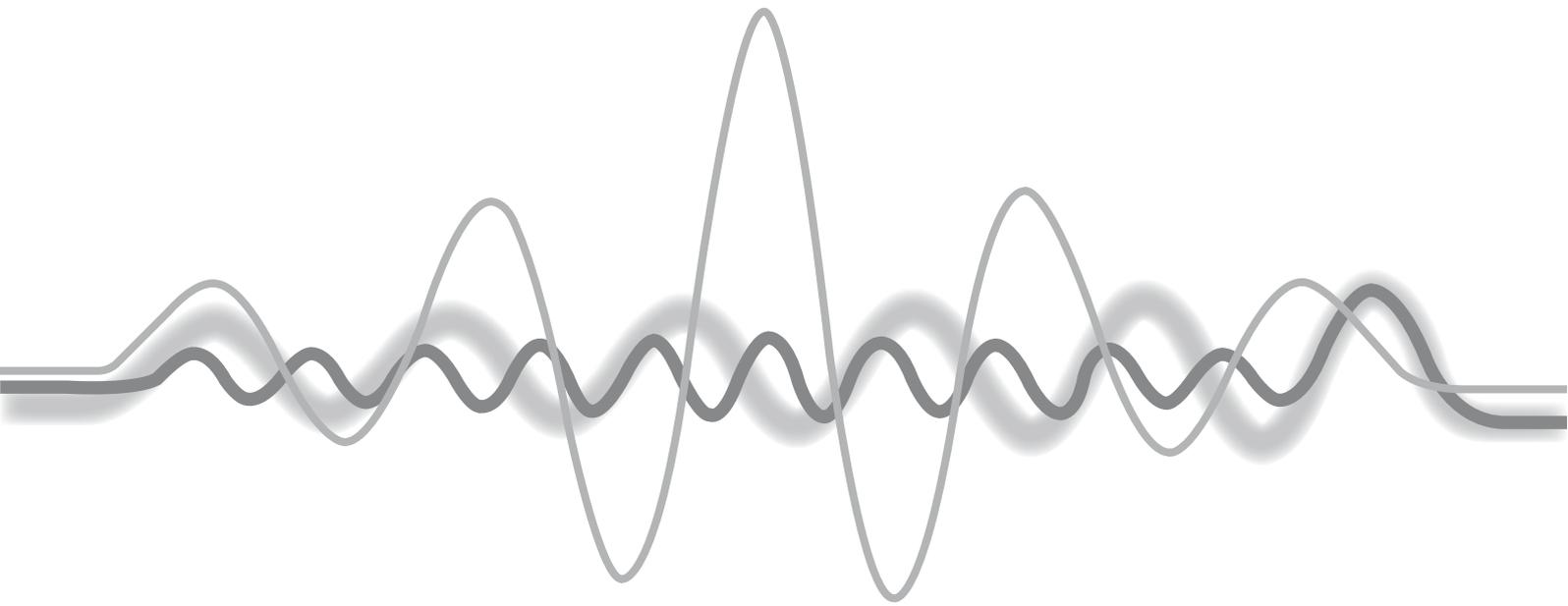
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings (Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume) are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble and Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.peugeot.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	



Audio system / Bluetooth®



	Contents
First steps	328
Steering mounted controls	329
Radio	330
Media	332
Telephone	336
Audio settings	339
Configuration	340
Screen menu map(s)	341
Frequently asked questions	342

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off after activation of energy economy mode.

First steps



On / Off, volume adjustment.



Select the source:

Radio: FM1, FM2, AM, CD, USB, AUX, Streaming.

Telephone: accept an incoming call. Telephone, press and hold: end a call, access the calls log for the connected telephone.



Adjust audio settings: sound ambience, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear balance, automatic volume.



Automatic search for a lower radio frequency.
Select the previous CD, USB track.
Navigation in a list.
Press and hold: fast back.



Display the list of stations received, the CD/USB tracks or folders.
Press and hold: update the list of stations received.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).



Automatic search for a higher radio frequency.
Select the next CD, USB track.
Navigation in a list.
Press and hold: fast forward.



Open the main menu.



Select a preset radio station.
Radio, press and hold: preset a radio station.
Other than radio: see the corresponding sections.



Eject CD.

Steering mounted controls



Radio: select the previous / next preset station.
 CD / USB: select the genre / artist / folder / playlist from the list depending on classification.
 Select the previous / next item in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
 CD / MP3 / USB: select the next track.
 CD / USB: press and hold: fast forward.



Change the audio sound.
 Confirm a selection.
 Start/end call with the telephone.
 Press and hold: access to the call log.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
 CD / MP3 / USB: select the previous track.
 CD / USB: press and hold: fast back.



Volume increase.



Volume decrease.



Mute: cut the sound by simultaneously pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons.
 Restore the sound: by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Radio

Presetting a station

 Press **SRC/TEL** repeatedly to select the FM1, FM2 or AM waveband.

 Press and hold one of the buttons to preset the station being listened to. The name of the station is displayed and an audible signal confirms the preset.

i The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground..) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking (alternative frequencies) mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Selecting a station

 Press a button to listen to the corresponding preset station.

Managing a list

 Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.

 Select the desired radio station using one of the buttons.

 Confirm with "**OK**".

 Briefly press one of the buttons to change to the next or previous letter.

 Press and hold on **LIST** to build or update the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

Entering a frequency

 Press on **MENU**.

 Select "**Radio**".

 Select "**Write freq.**".

 Press **+**.

or

 press **-** to select the desired frequency.

 Confirm with "**OK**".

RDS

i RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

MENU With source FM1 or FM2, press **MENU**.



Select "**Radio**".



Select or deselect "**RDS**" to switch RDS on or off.

OK

Confirm with "**OK**" to save the setting.

Receiving TA messages

i The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

MENU Press **MENU**.



Select "**Radio**".



Select or deselect "**TA**" to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

OK

Confirm with "**OK**" to save the setting.

Displaying RADIO TEXT

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

MENU With the radio displayed on the screen, press **MENU**.



Select "**Radio**".



Select or deselect "**TXT**" to activate or deactivate the display of Radio Text.

OK

Confirm with "**OK**" to save the setting.

Media

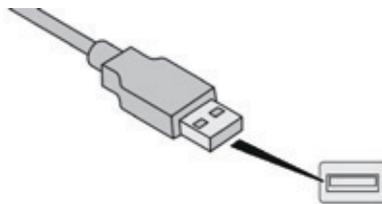
USB player



This unit comprises a USB port and a Jack auxiliary socket, depending on model.

! The system constitutes playlists (in temporary memory) the creation time for which can be from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Limiting the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if there is no change in the lists, the next loading time will be shorter.

i At a first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the order previously chosen is retained.



Connect a USB memory stick to the USB port or connect a USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



Press **SRC/TEL** repeatedly to select "**USB**".



Press one of these buttons to select the next or previous track in the list.



Press one of these buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.



Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or back.



Press **LIST** to display the structure of the folders in the compilation.



Select a line in the list.



Confirm with "**OK**".



Up a level in the menu.



Press **MENU**.



Select "**Media**".



Select or deselect "**TA**" to switch traffic announcements on or off.



Select the play mode: "**Normal**", "**Random**", "**Random all**" or "**Repeat**".

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the Jack auxiliary socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Press **SRC/TEL** repeatedly to select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Control is from the portable device.

! Do not connect a given device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert a CD into the player, play starts automatically.

Insert an MP3 compilation CD into the CD player.

The audio system searches for audio tracks, which can take from a few to several dozen seconds before play starts.

Press the **SRC/TEL** button repeatedly to select "**CD**".

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous or next track in the list.

Press one of these buttons to select the previous or next folder according to the category chosen.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or back.

LIST

Press **LIST** to display the folder structure of the compilation.



Select a line in the list.

OK

Confirm with "**OK**".

Return to the top level of the folder structure to select the type of tracks.

- By **Folders** (CD or USB): all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- By **Artist** (USB only): all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- By **Genre** (USB only): all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- By **Playlist** (CD or USB): if playlists have been saved.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with ".mp3", ".wma" and ".wav" on a CD and can play files with ".ogg" extension only on USB.

It is recommended that file names be of no more than 20 characters and avoiding special characters (ex: " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any problem reading or displaying the files.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The playlists accepted on CD, MP3, iPod and USB connection are types ".m3u" and ".wpl". The number of files recognised is limited to 5 000 in 500 folders on a maximum of 8 levels.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels with a maximum of 192 folders. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.

During play, the folder structure is not observed.

Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port. This may cause damage to your installation.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

i The use of genuine Apple® USB cables is recommended to ensure correct operation.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section.

In the "**Bluetooth: Audio**" menu, select the telephone to connect.
The audio system connects automatically to a newly paired telephone.

SRC /

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SRC/TEL*** button.

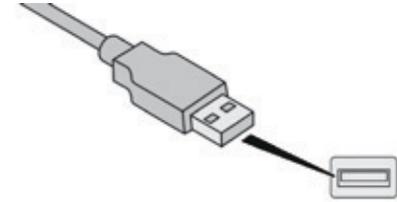
Control of playback is via the audio system. The control of common tracks is possible via the audio system control buttons and the steering mounted controls**. Contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

The audio quality depends on the quality of the transmission from the telephone.

* In certain cases, the play of audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

** If the telephone supports the function.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

The classifications available are those on the portable player connected (artists / albums / genres / playlist s/ audiobooks / podcasts).

The software version of the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is set as visible to all (refer to the telephone instructions).

 Press the **MENU** button.

 Select **"Bluetooth"**.

 Select **"Search"**.

A window is displayed with **"Searching device"**.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

 Select the telephone to be paired from the list.

 Confirm with **"OK"**.

Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

In some cases, the Bluetooth address of the telephone may appear instead of the name of the telephone.

 A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: choose a 4 digit code.

 Confirm with **"OK"**.

A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.

If pairing fails, try again; the number of attempts is not limited.

A message appears in the screen to confirm the result of the connection.

i Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for detected Bluetooth devices.

i The directory and the calls list can be accessed after the synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible). Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

Managing connections

 Press the **MENU** button.

 Select "**Bluetooth**".

 Select "**BT management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

 Indicates connection of the audio profile.

 Indicates connection of the hands-free profile.

 In the list, select a telephone to pair.

 Confirm with "**OK**".

 Select or deselect:

- "**Tel.**": hands-free connection
- "**Audio**": play audio files

 "**OK**" to confirm the choice.

 "**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

 It is not possible to pair more than 5 telephones. Press **MENU** and select "**Bluetooth**". Select "**BT management**". If 5 telephones are already paired, select the telephone to delete by pressing "**OK**" and selecting "**Delete**" (refer to the "Managing connections" section).

Making a call

From the directory

 Press the **MENU** button.

 Select "**Telephone**".

 Select "**Call**".

 Select "**Directory**".

 Select the desired number.

 Confirm with "**OK**" to start the call.

Making a call

Recently called numbers*

 Press and hold **SRC/TEL** to display the calls list.

i For access to the calls list, it is also possible to press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**", then select "**Call**", and finally select "**Calls list**".

 In the list of calls, select the number and choose "**Missed calls**", "**Dialed calls**" or "**Answered calls**".

 Scroll through the calls list.

OK Confirm with "**OK**".

 Press one of these buttons to go to the previous or next page in the list.

OK "**OK**" starts the call.

i The calls list includes the calls sent from and by from the vehicle via the connected telephone. It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; stop the vehicle as a safety measure.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Press **SRC/TEL**.

or

 select "**YES**" to accept the call,

or

 select "**NO**" to reject the call.

 Pressing and holding the back button,

or

 on **SRC/TEL** also rejects an incoming call.

* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

Managing calls

Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

SRC / TEL

Pressing and holding on **SRC/TEL** also ends the call.

Secret - Mute

(so that the caller cannot hear)

In the contextual menu:



Select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.



Select "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on again.

Combined mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)

From the contextual menu:



Select "**Combined mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.



Select "**Combined mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

i In certain cases, the combined mode has to be activated from the telephone. The Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically if the ignition has been switched off, then on again (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

Audio settings



Press  to display the audio settings menu.

Press  to go to the next setting.

The settings available are:

- AMBIANCE: BASS, TREBLE and LOUDNESS.
- BALANCE (left/right balance), FADER (front/rear balance)
- SOUND DIST. (driver or passenger).
- AUTO VOLUME.

i The distribution, or spatialisation of sound, is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

i The AMBIANCE, TREBLE and BASS audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

Configuration

Display and language settings

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Config.**".



Select "**Displaying**" to activate or deactivate scrolling text.



Select "**Language**" to modify the display language.



Select "**Version**" for information on the software.



Select "**System**" when you want to install an update. Information can be obtained from a PEUGEOT dealer.



Select "**Unit**" to modify the units for temperature (Celsius, Fahrenheit).

Screen menu map(s)

MENU

1 Radio

- 2 TA
- 2 RDS
- 2 TXT
- 2 Write freq.

1 Media

- 2 Normal
- 2 Random
- 2 Random all
- 2 Repeat
- 2 TA

1 Telephone

- 2 Call
- 3 Directory
- 3 Calls list
- 4 Missed calls
- 4 Dialed calls
- 4 Answered calls

2 Phone status

1 Bluetooth

2 BT management

2 Search

1 Config.

- 2 Displaying
- 3 Scrolling text

2 Language

- 3 Deutsch
- 3 English
- 3 Español
- 3 Français
- 3 Italiano
- 3 Nederlands
- 3 Português
- 3 Português-Brasil
- 3 Русский
- 3 Türkçe

2 Version

2 System

2 Unit

- 3 Celsius
- 3 Fahrenheit

Frequently asked questions

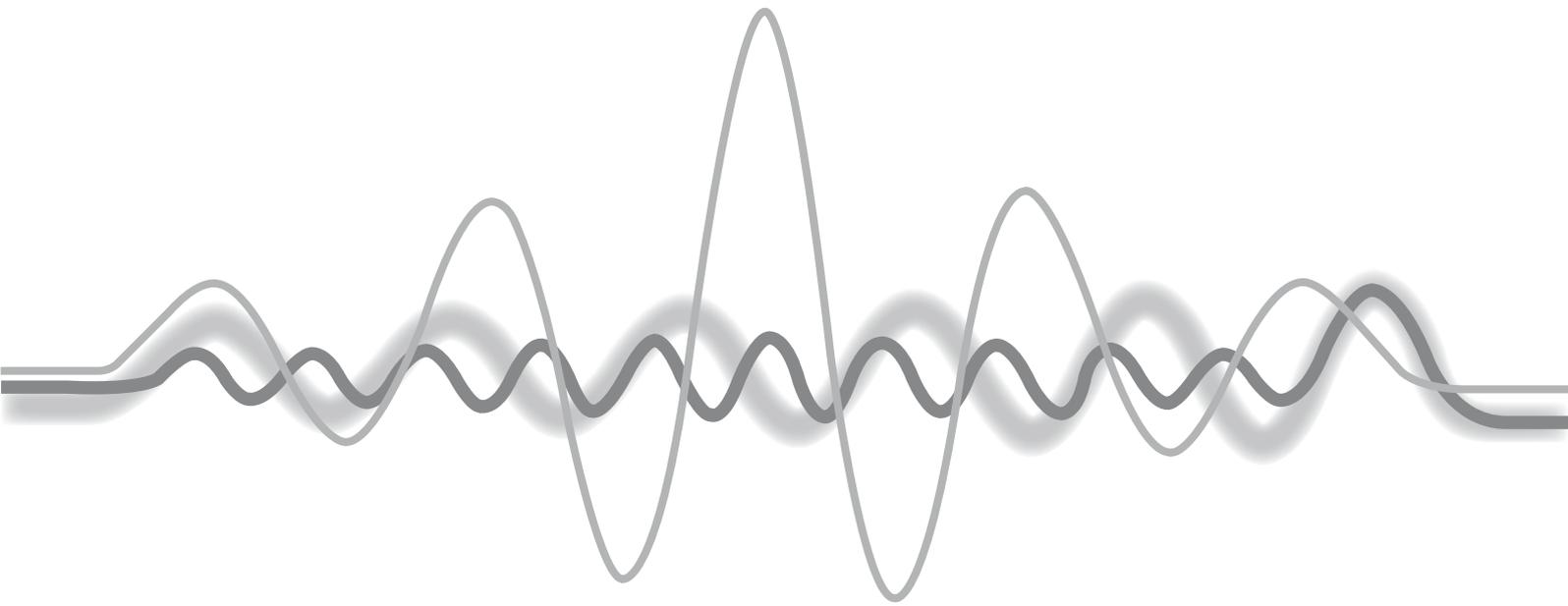
The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).</p>	<p>For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (volume, bass, treble, ambience, loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings (volume, bass, treble, ambience, loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to adjust audio settings (bass, treble, Front-Rear balance, Left-Right balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>
<p>When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, treble and bass are reset to zero.</p>	<p>Choosing an ambience imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is only possible with a personalised ambience.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambience setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>
<p>When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.</p>	<p>Choosing the "driver" distribution setting imposes a balance setting.</p>	<p>Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
Traffic announcement TA is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the SRC/TEL button to return to the waveband (FM1 or FM2) on which the stations are stored.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed on the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised.	Use only USB memory sticks formatted to FAT32 (28-bit file allocation table).
A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.	Automatic connection overrides manual connection.	Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
An iPod is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	The iPod is of a generation that is not compatible with the USB connection.	
The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.	Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply. Caution: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).
When streaming, the sound cuts momentarily.	Some telephones prioritise connection of the "hands-free" profile.	Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.



Audio system



	Contents
First steps	348
Steering mounted controls	349
Radio	350
Media	352
Audio settings	354
Screen menu map(s)	355
Frequently asked questions	356

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off after activation of economy mode.

First steps



On / Off, volume adjustment.

SRC/BAND

Selection of source:
FM1, FM2, AM, CD, AUX.



Adjust audio settings:
sound ambience, treble, bass,
loudness, left/right balance,
automatic volume.



Automatic search for a lower/higher
radio frequency.
Select the next CD track.
Navigation in a list.
Press and hold: fast forward or back.

LIST

Display the list of stations received,
the CD/MP3 tracks or folders.
Press and hold: update the list of
stations received.



Manual search step by step for a
higher radio frequency.
Select the next MP3 track.
Navigation in a list.



Manual search step by step for a
lower radio frequency.
Select the previous MP3 track.
Navigation in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).



Automatic search step by step for a
higher radio frequency.
Select the next CD track.
Navigation in a list.
Press and hold: fast forward.

MENU

Open the main menu.



Select a preset radio station.
Radio, press and hold: preset a radio
station.



Eject CD.

Steering mounted controls



Radio: select the previous / next preset station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD / MP3: select the previous track.
CD: press and hold: fast back.



Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD / MP3: select the next track.
CD: press and hold: fast forward.



Volume up.



Volume down.



Change audio source.
Confirm a selection.



Mute on: cut the sound by simultaneously pressing the volume up and down buttons.
Mute off: press one of the volume buttons.

Radio

Presetting a station

 Press the **SRC/BAND** button repeatedly to select the FM1, FM2 or AM waveband.

 Press and hold a button to preset the station being listened to. The name of the station is displayed and an audible signal confirms that it has been preset.

i The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Selecting a station

 Press a button to listen to the corresponding preset station.

Managing the list

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received, in alphabetical order.

 Select the desired radio station by pressing one of the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

 Briefly press one of the buttons to change to the next or previous letter.

LIST Press and hold on **LIST** to construct or update the list of stations; the sound is interrupted temporarily.

RDS

i RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage by an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

MENU Press **MENU**.

 Select **"Radio"**.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

 Select **"RDS"**.

OK Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to switch RDS on or off.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving TA messages

i The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

MENU

Press **MENU**.



Select "**Radio**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Traffic TA**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to switch on or off the reception of traffic announcements.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Display RADIO TEXT

i Radio Text is information transmitted by the radio station on the station or on the song being played.

Press **MENU**.

MENU



Select "**Radio**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**INFO TEXT**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**On**" or "**Off**" to switch radio text on or off.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Media Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Press the **SRC/BAND** button repeatedly and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Control is from the portable device.

CD player

Insert a CD into the player, play starts automatically.

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player. The audio system searches for audio tracks, which can take from a few to several dozen seconds before play starts.

Press the **SRC/BAND** button repeatedly to select "**CD**".



Press one of these buttons to select a track in the list.



Press one of these buttons to select the previous or next folder according to the category chosen.



Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or back.

Playing a compilation

LIST

Press **LIST** to display the folder structure for the compilation.



Select a line in the list.

OK

Confirm with "**OK**".



Jump a page.



Select a folder / Playlist.

OK

Start play of the chosen track.



Go up one level.

Go back to the first level to select the track classification:

- By **Folders**: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order, ignoring the folder structure.
- By **Playlist**: depending on the playlists saved.



The play modes available are:

- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

Play mode

MENU

Press **MENU**.



Select "**Media**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select the desired play mode.

OK

Confirm with **OK** to save the changes.

Information and advice

The audio system can only play files with ".mp3", ".wma" or ".wav" extensions.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for a given disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Playlists accepted are types .m3u and .pls. The system can recognise up to 5 000 files in 500 folders on 8 levels.

On a given disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

The folder structure is not observed during playback.

Audio settings



Press  to display the audio settings menu.

The settings available are:

- AMBIANCE,
- BASS,
- TREBLE,
- LOUDNESS,
- BALANCE (L/R),
- AUTO VOLUME.



Select the settings to adjust.



Confirm with **OK**.



Adjust the setting.



Confirm with **OK**.



The AMBIANCE, TREBLE and BASS settings are different and independent for each sound source.

Screen menu map(s)

MENU

- 1 **Radio**
- 2 Traffic
- 2 RDS
- 2 TEXT INFO

- 1 **Media**
- 2 Play
- 3 Normal
- 3 Random
- 3 Random all
- 3 Repeat
- 2 TEXT INFO

- 1 **Displaying**
- 2 SCROLLING

- 1 **Unit**
- 2 Celsius
- 2 Fahrenheit

- 1 **Language**

Frequently asked questions

The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).</p>	<p>For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambiance, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambiance, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>
<p>When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambiance setting is deselected. When changing the ambiance setting, treble and bass are reset to zero.</p>	<p>Choosing an ambiance imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is not possible.</p>	<p>Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambiance setting to obtain the desired sound quality.</p>

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Switch on the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the SRC button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2) on which the stations are stored.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	<p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambiance) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambiance.
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	<p>When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.</p>	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

Accessories	134, 231
Active City Brake.....	145
AdBlue®.....	24, 175, 180
Adjusting headlamps	124
Adjusting head restraints	57
Adjusting seats.....	56
Adjusting the air distribution	66, 69
Adjusting the air flow.....	65, 69
Adjusting the date	42
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel	59
Adjusting the seat belt height	149
Adjusting the temperature	65, 68
Adjusting the time	42
Advice on care and maintenance	230
Advice on driving	79, 224
Airbags	27, 152
Airbags, curtain.....	154, 155
Airbags, front.....	152, 155
Airbags, lateral.....	154, 155
Air conditioning	12
Air conditioning, digital	67, 70
Air conditioning, manual	65, 70
Air filter	240
Air intake	66, 69
Air vents	62
Alarm	43, 52
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....	140
Anti-theft	46, 47
Armrest, front	72
Assistance call.....	136, 255
Assistance, emergency braking	140
Audible warning	136
Audio streaming (Bluetooth)	286, 288, 335
Audio system (radio)	327, 347
Automatic illumination of headlamps	118
Auxiliary socket.....	73, 286, 333, 352

B

Battery.....	214, 240
Battery, charging.....	216
Battery, remote control	46, 47
Blind	133
BlueHDI.....	175
Bluetooth (telephone).....	314, 336
Bonnet.....	234
Boot.....	50, 75
Brake discs.....	241
Brake lamps	206
Brake pads	241
Brake warning lamp	22
Braking assistance system	140
Bulbs (changing)	202

C

Cable, audio	286, 333, 352
Capacity, fuel tank	170
CarPlay connection.....	307
CD	286, 332, 352
Central locking	43, 51
Changing a bulb	202, 206
Changing a fuse.....	208
Changing a wheel	194, 195
Changing a wiper blade	129, 220
Changing the remote control battery.....	46
Checking levels.....	237-239
Checking the engine oil level.....	31, 237
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit)	186, 193

D

Checks	235-241
Child lock.....	169
Child seats	161-168
Child seats, conventional.....	161
Child seats, ISOFIX	165-168
Cleaning (advice)	230
Closing the boot.....	50
Closing the doors.....	48
Connected services.....	298
Connection, Bluetooth	300, 314, 335
Connection, MirrorLink	302
Connection, Wi-Fi network	300
Control, electric windows.....	54
Control, emergency boot release	50
Controls, at steering.....	260, 329, 349
Control stalk, lighting	117
Control stalk, wipers	127
Coolant level	238
Courtesy lamps	131
Cover, load space	77
Cruise control.....	106, 108
Cup holder.....	71

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio.....	284
Date (setting).....	42
Daytime running lamps.....	118, 121
Daytime running lamps, LED	121, 204
Deactivating the passenger airbag.....	153, 158

Deadlocking	44
Demisting/defrosting	70
Dials and gauges	14, 15
Dimensions	252
Dipstick	31, 237
Direction indicators	122, 135, 203, 206
Display screen, instrument panel	14, 15
Door pockets	71
Doors	48
Driving abroad	124
Driving economically	12
Dynamic stability control (DSC)	23, 140, 142, 143

E

EBA (Emergency braking assistance)	140
Eco-driving (advice)	12
Economy mode	219
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)	140
Emergency call	136, 254
Emergency warning lamps	78, 135
Emissions control system, SCR	25, 175
Energy economy mode	219
Engine compartment	235, 236
Engine, Diesel	18, 173, 174, 236, 247, 249
Engine oil level indicator	237
Engine, petrol	173, 235, 243, 245
Environment	12, 46, 70, 98, 181, 214, 239

F

Filling the fuel tank	170, 172, 173
Filter, particle	239, 240
Fitting a wheel	199
Fitting roof bars	230
Fittings, boot	75
Fittings, interior	71, 72
Flap, fuel filler	170, 172
Flashing indicators	122, 135, 203
Foglamp, rear	119, 206, 207
Foglamps, front	119, 125, 205
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors	60
Frequency (radio)	282, 330, 350
Fuel	12, 173
Fuel consumption	12, 40
Fuel tank	170, 172
Fusebox, dashboard	210, 212
Fusebox, engine compartment	213
Fuses	208

Grip control	143
Guide-me-home	45, 122, 123

H

Hazard warning lamps	78, 135
Headlamps, automatic illumination	123
Headlamps	117, 203
Head restraints, front	57
Head restraints, rear	59
Heating	64, 65, 67
Hill start assist	103

G

Gauge, fuel	14, 15, 170
Gearbox, automatic	12, 91, 95, 214, 241
Gearbox, electronic	12, 72, 84, 87, 100, 214, 241
Gearbox, manual	12, 83, 100, 241
Gear lever, automatic gearbox	91
Gear lever, electronic gearbox	84, 87, 241
Gear lever, manual gearbox	83
Gear shift indicator	99
Glove box	71, 72

I

Identification plates	253
Ignition switch	80
Immobiliser, electronic	46, 47
Indicator, coolant temperature	33
Indicator, engine oil level	31, 237
Indicator lamps, operation	16, 20
Indicators, direction	135, 203, 206
Inflating tyres	12, 253
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit)	186, 193

Input, auxiliary..... 73, 286, 333, 352
 Instrument panels 14, 15
 Instrument panel screen 14, 15, 38, 99
 Internet browser 299
 Isofix mountings..... 165

J

Jack 194
 Jukebox 289
 Jump starting 215

K

Keeping children safe 151, 153, 156-160
 Key with remote control 43
 Kit, hands-free 314, 336
 Kit, temporary puncture repair..... 183, 188

L

Labels, identification 253
 Level, brake fluid 237
 Level, Diesel additive 239
 Level, engine coolant..... 33, 238
 Level, engine oil 31, 237
 Levels and checks 235-239
 Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 206
 Lighting control stalk 122
 Lighting dimmer 130
 Lighting, directional..... 125
 Lighting, guide-me home 45, 122, 123
 Lighting, interior 131
 Lighting, mood 132
 Loading 12, 230
 Load reduction mode 219
 Locating your vehicle 45
 Locking 43
 Locking the boot 50
 Low fuel level 26, 170
 Luggage retaining strap 75

M

Maintenance (advice)..... 230
 Maintenance, routine 12, 235
 Map reading lamps 131
 Markings, identification..... 253
 Mat 74
 Menu (touch screen) 261, 262, 264, 268,
 276, 278, 280, 290, 292, 294, 310, 312
 Mirror, rear view 61

Mirrors, door..... 60
 Misfuel prevention..... 172
 Mountings, Isofix..... 165
 MP3 CD..... 332, 352

N

Navigation 262
 Net, high load retaining..... 76
 Net, storage..... 75
 Number plate lamps..... 207

O

Oil filter 240
 Oil level..... 237
 Opening the bonnet 234
 Opening the boot 50
 Opening the doors 48
 Opening the fuel filler flap..... 170
 Opening the roof blind 133

P

Pads, brake	241
Paint colour code	253
Panoramic glass sunroof	133
Park Assist	113
Parking brake	82, 241
Parking lamps	122
Parking sensors, front.....	111
Parking sensors, rear.....	110
Passenger compartment filter	240
Petrol	173
PEUGEOT Connect Assistance	255
PEUGEOT Connect Packs	255
PEUGEOT Connect SOS	254
Player, Apple®	288, 335
Player, MP3 CD.....	286, 332, 352
Port, USB	71, 73, 286, 332
Pre-heater, Diesel.....	18
Pressures, tyres.....	253
Pre-tensioning seat belts.....	151
Priming the fuel system	174
Protecting children.....	151, 153, 156-160
Puncture.....	183

R

Radio.....	282, 330, 350
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB).....	284
Range, fuel.....	40
Range, AdBlue.....	176
RDS.....	283, 331, 350

Rear foglamp.....	119, 206, 207
Rear screen, demisting.....	70
Recharging the battery	216
Recirculation, air	66, 69
Reduction of electrical load	219
Regeneration of the particle filter	240
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.....	138
Reinitialising the remote control.....	46
Reminder, key in ignition.....	81
Reminder, lighting on.....	120
Remote control.....	43-47
Removing a wheel	197
Removing the mat.....	74
Replacing bulbs	202
Replacing fuses	208
Replacing the air filter	240
Replacing the oil filter	240
Replacing the passenger compartment filter	240
Resetting the service indicator	30
Resetting the trip recorder.....	41
Reversing camera.....	112
Reversing lamp	206, 207
Risk areas (update).....	273
Roof bars.....	230
Routine checks	240, 241
Running out of fuel (Diesel).....	174

S

Safety, children	151, 153, 156-160
Screen, instrument panel.....	14, 15, 38
Screen menu map.....	262, 264, 268, 276, 278, 280, 290, 292, 294, 310, 312, 341, 355
Screenwash	126
Screenwash fluid level.....	238
Screenwash, rear.....	127
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction).....	175
Seat belts	149-151, 161
Seats, front.....	56
Seats, rear.....	58
Selector, gear.....	83, 84, 87, 91, 95
Serial number, vehicle	253
Service indicator	28
Servicing	12
Settings	290, 339, 354
Sidelamps	117, 121, 122, 204, 206
Side repeater	205
Snow chains.....	139, 201
Socket, 12 V accessory	71, 72
Sockets, audio	73, 286, 333, 352
Speed limiter	104, 108
Starting the engine	80
Starting using another battery	215
Station, radio.....	282, 330, 350
Stay, bonnet	234
Steering mounted controls, audio	260, 329, 349
Steering wheel, adjustment	59
Stop & Start.....	19, 40, 70, 100, 113, 170, 214, 218, 234, 240
Storage.....	71, 72
Stowing rings	75
Switching off the engine	80
Synchronising the remote control.....	46

T

Table of weights	245, 249
Tables of engines	243, 247
Tables of fuses	208
Tank, fuel.....	170, 172
Technical data.....	243-249
Telephone	310, 336
Temperature, coolant.....	33
Third brake lamp.....	207
Three flashes (direction indicators)	135
Time (setting)	42
TMC (Traffic info).....	274
Tools.....	194, 208
Total distance recorder.....	41
Touch screen.....	34, 39, 139, 257
Touch screen (Menus)	261
Towbar.....	223, 224
Towbar with quickly detachable towball.....	225
Towed loads	245, 249
Towing another vehicle	222
Towing eye.....	221
Traction control (ASR)	23, 140
Traffic information (TA)	275, 331
Traffic information (TMC).....	274
Trailer	223, 224
Trajectory control systems.....	140
Triangle, warning.....	78
Trip computer	38-40
Trip distance recorder.....	41
Tyre pressures	253
Tyres.....	12
Tyre under-inflation detection.....	137, 187

U

Under-inflation (detection)	137, 187
Unlocking	43
Unlocking the boot	50
Updating risk areas.....	273
Updating the date.....	42
Updating the time.....	42
USB	73, 286, 332

V

Vehicle identification.....	253
Ventilation	62-64
Voice recognition	303, 307

W

Warning and indicator lamps	16-27
Warning lamp, braking system	22
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater	18
Warning lamps	21
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system	25
Washing (advice).....	230
Weights	245, 249

Wheel, spare.....	194, 195
Window controls	54
Wiper blades (changing)	129, 220
Wiper control stalk	126
Wiper, rear.....	127
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....	19, 126, 128

! Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Printed in the EU

Anglais

01-16



PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS

Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14

Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P. 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : <http://www.peugeot.com>

Société Anonyme au capital de 172 771 770 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Low fuel level	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	There remains approximately 5 litres of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made.
		flashing with the needle in the red zone.	There remains very little fuel in the tank.	Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres (45 litres for the BlueHDi Diesel engine) . Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	Engine oil pressure	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Battery charge*	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + SERVICE	Under-inflation	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Fuel tank

Fuel tank capacity: approximately **50 litres** (**45 litres** for the BlueHDi Diesel engine).

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. There remains **approximately 5 litres** of fuel in the tank. When the warning lamp flashes, there is **very little fuel left**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

i The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is refitted. Removing the filler cap may cause an inrush of air. This vacuum is perfectly normal and results from the sealing of the system.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

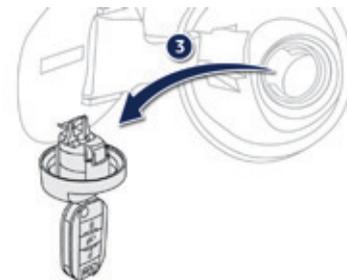
Refuelling



1. Open the filler flap.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Hook the filler cap.

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.



To fill the tank safely:

- 🔑 **the engine must be switched off,**
- 🔑 open the fuel filler flap 1,
- 🔑 insert the key in the cap 2, then turn it to the left,
- 🔑 remove the cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the flap 3,
- 🔑 fill the tank, **but do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the pump**; this could cause malfunctions.

When you have filled the tank:

- ☞ put the cap back in place,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the flap.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the engine of your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Low fuel level fixed with the needle in the red zone.	There remains approximately 5 litres of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Fuel tank capacity: approximately 50 litres (45 litres for the BlueHDi Diesel engine) . Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	flashing with the needle in the red zone.	There remains very little fuel in the tank.	
	Engine oil pressure fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Battery charge* fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + SERVICE	Under-inflation fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
	flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Touch screen

It gives access to:

- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display configuration menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.

And, depending on equipment, it allows:

- the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map, etc.).

A light wipe is not enough.

The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.

This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands. Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

State of indicator lamps

Some buttons contain an indicator lamp that gives the state of the corresponding function.

Green indicator: you have switched on the corresponding function.

Orange indicator: you have switched off the corresponding function.

Principles

Press the "MENU" button for access to the different menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.

Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.



After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

1. Volume / mute.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Menus

MENU Press this button for access to the different menus.



Navigation

Depending on trim level, navigation may be unavailable, an option or standard.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Radio Media

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Settings

Allows configuration of the display and the system.

Gives access to interactive help for the vehicle's main systems and warning / indicator lamps.



Connected services

Run some of your smartphone's applications via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®. See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Telephone

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Driving

Allows access to the trip computer and, depending on version, the adjustment of settings for certain functions. See the corresponding section.

Fuel tank

Fuel tank capacity: approximately **50 litres** (**45 litres** for the BlueHDi Diesel engine).

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. There remains **approximately 5 litres** of fuel in the tank. When the warning lamp flashes, there is **very little fuel left**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

i The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is refitted. Removing the filler cap may cause an inrush of air. This vacuum is perfectly normal and results from the sealing of the system.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

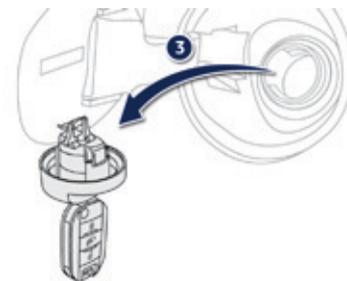
Refuelling



1. Open the filler flap.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Hook the filler cap.

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.



To fill the tank safely:

- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap 1,
- ☞ insert the key in the cap 2, then turn it to the left,
- ☞ remove the cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the flap 3,
- ☞ fill the tank, **but do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

When you have filled the tank:

- ☞ put the cap back in place,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the flap.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the engine of your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations.

E5 Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a biofuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

E10

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations.

B7 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

E5

E10

B7

B10

XTL

B20

B30

B10 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20 The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

B30

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer Diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter Diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.

If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

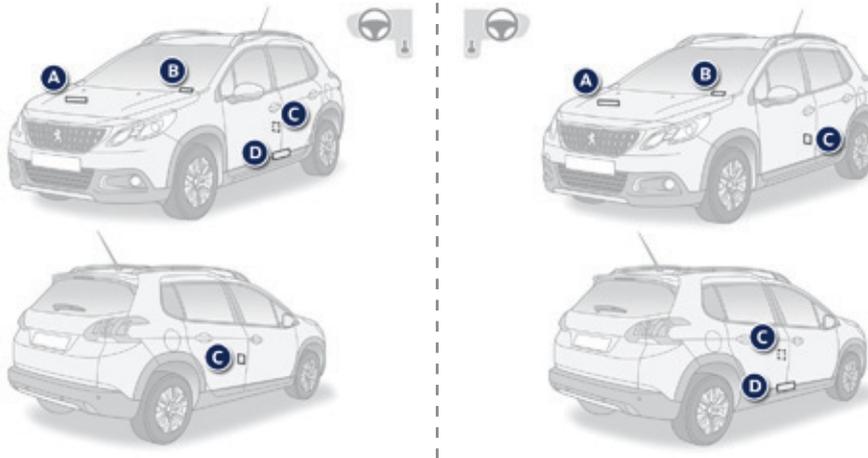
i Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) at the bottom of the windscreen aperture.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This number is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the centre pillar, on the left-hand or right-hand side.

D. Tyre/paint label.

This self-adhesive label is affixed to the centre pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

i The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

i The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

☘ Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 1



PEUGEOT Connect SOS

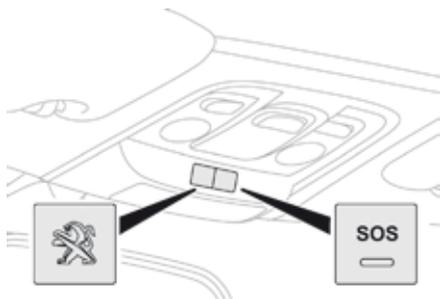


In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.



! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

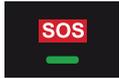
i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via your country's website.

* Depending on the general terms and conditions of use for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and the PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on your country's website.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: replace the back-up battery.

In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

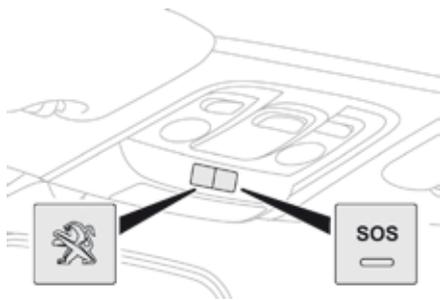
i For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and the PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on your country's website.

Emergency or assistance call

Type 2



PEUGEOT Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

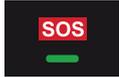
i If you benefit from the PEUGEOT Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via your country's website.

* Depending on the general terms and conditions of use for the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographic cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and the PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on your country's website.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



If the red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the red indicator lamp is on fixed: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



If the red indicator lamp is on fixed: the system has a fault.

If the red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls may not work.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down. A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" and "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

** Depending on the geographic cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and the PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on your country's website.

7-inch touch screen

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



	Contents
First steps	14
Steering mounted controls	16
Menus	17
Navigation	18
Navigation - Guidance	26
Traffic	30
Radio Media	32
Radio	38
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	40
Media	42
Settings	46
Connected services	54
MirrorLink™	54
CarPlay®	58
Telephone	60
Frequently asked questions	68

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

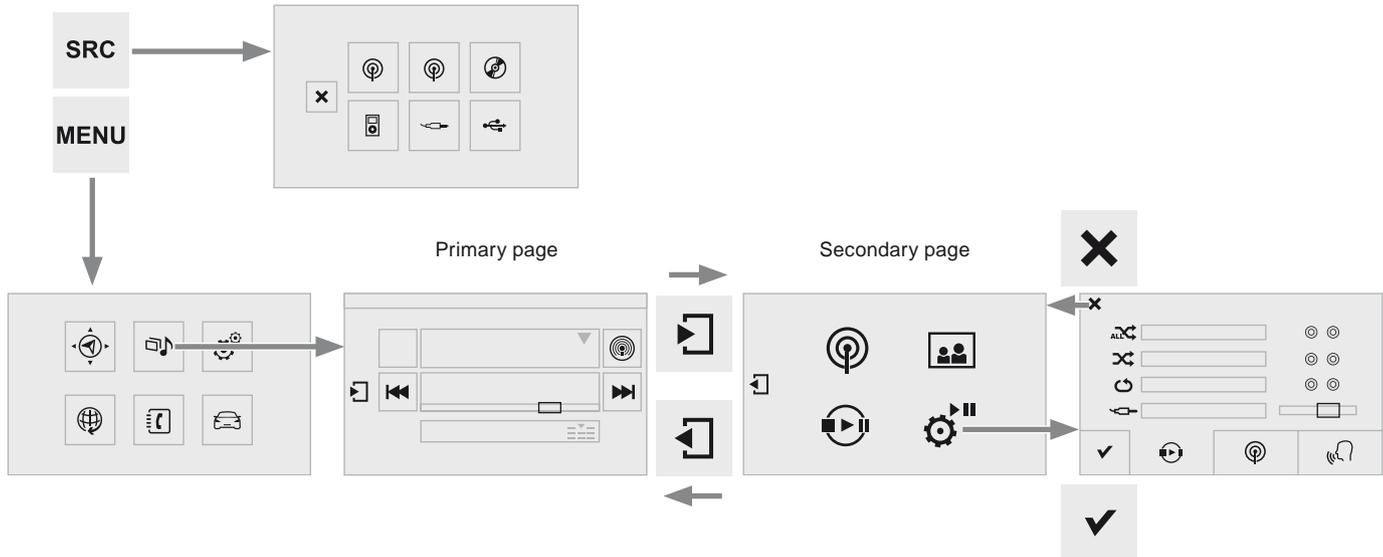
! As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby. Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

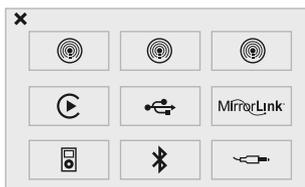
Use the buttons to the left of the touch screen for access to the menu carousels, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



i In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

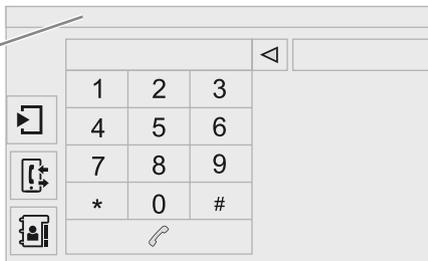


Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selection of audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM stations*.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player (located in the glove box)*.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and with Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



MENU

Press on **Menu** to display the menu carousel.

SRC

Press on **SRC** to display the audio sources carousel.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.

With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

i The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map, etc.). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised. The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

! To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) without any additional product. Do not use pointed objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls



Press: mute on / off.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Change audio source: radio, media.



Radio, rotate: automatic search for the previous / next station.

Radio, press: preset stations.

Media, rotate: previous / next track.

Press: confirm a selection.



Telephone: start or answer a call.

Call in progress: telephone menu (end call, secret mode, hands-free mode).

Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than call in progress, telephone menu.

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

Menus



Navigation

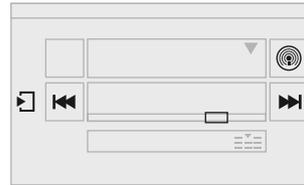
(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.



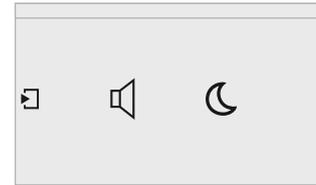
Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



Settings

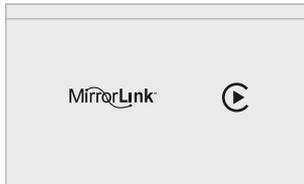


Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambiance, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Connected services

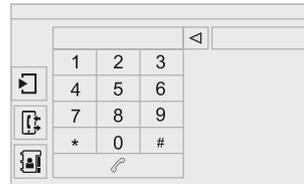
(Depending on equipment)



Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.



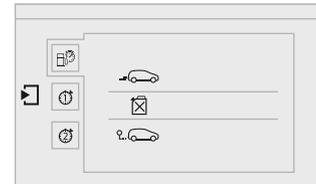
Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

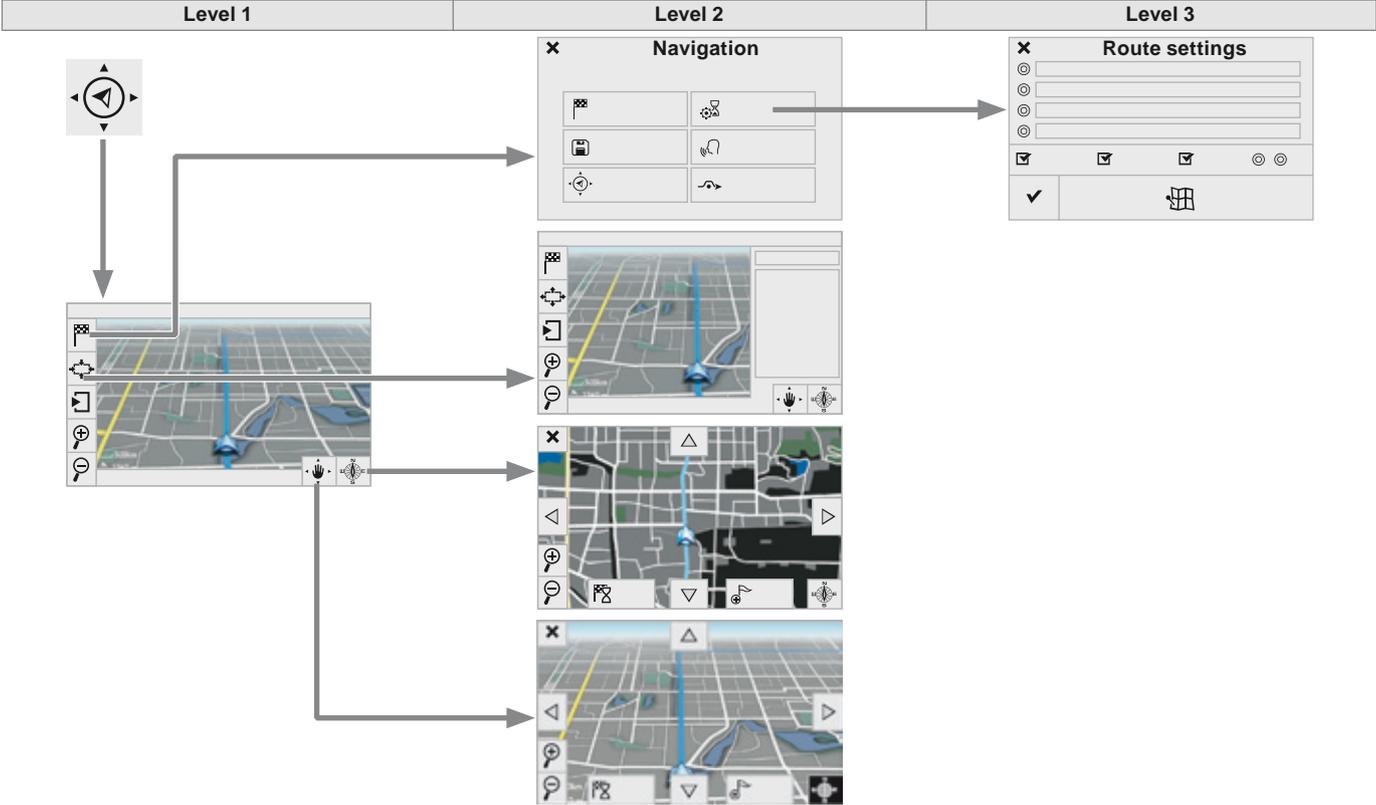


Driving

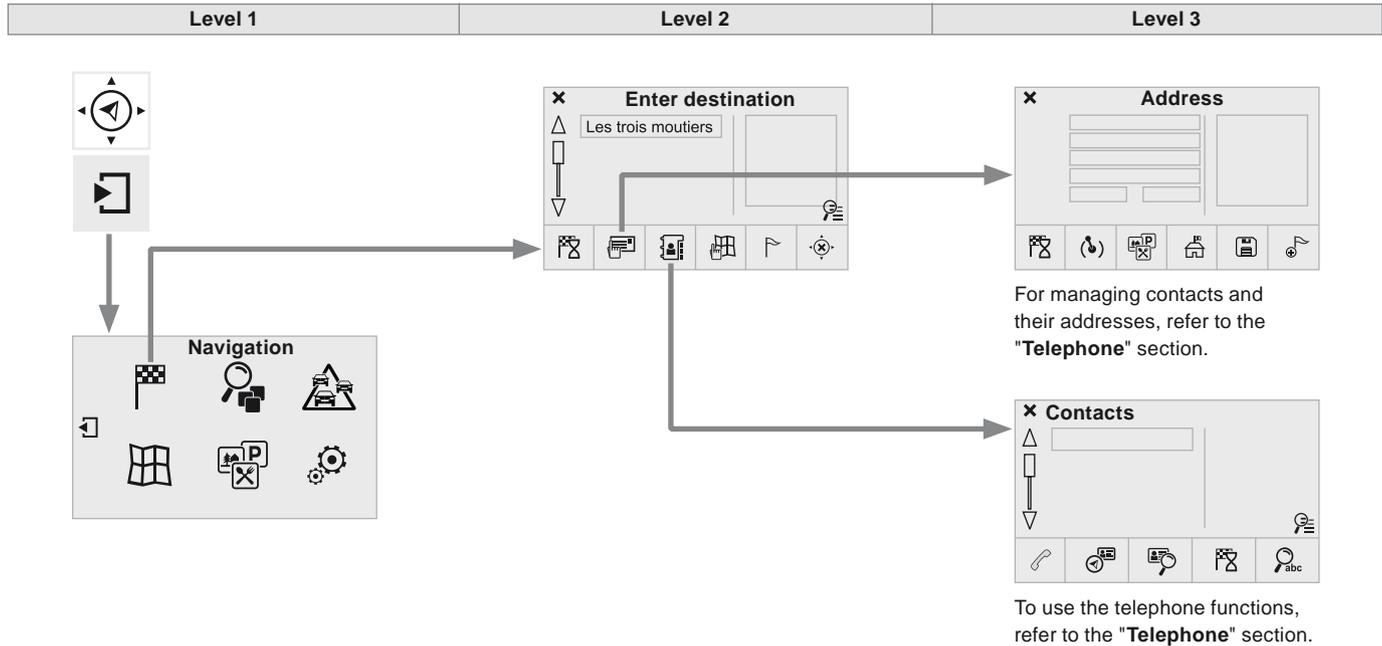


Access to the trip computer. Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

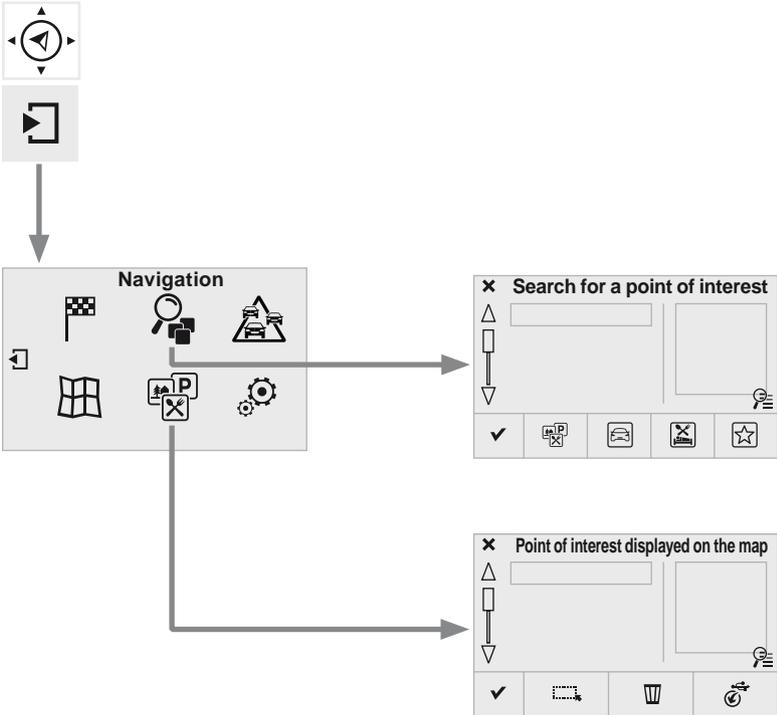
Navigation



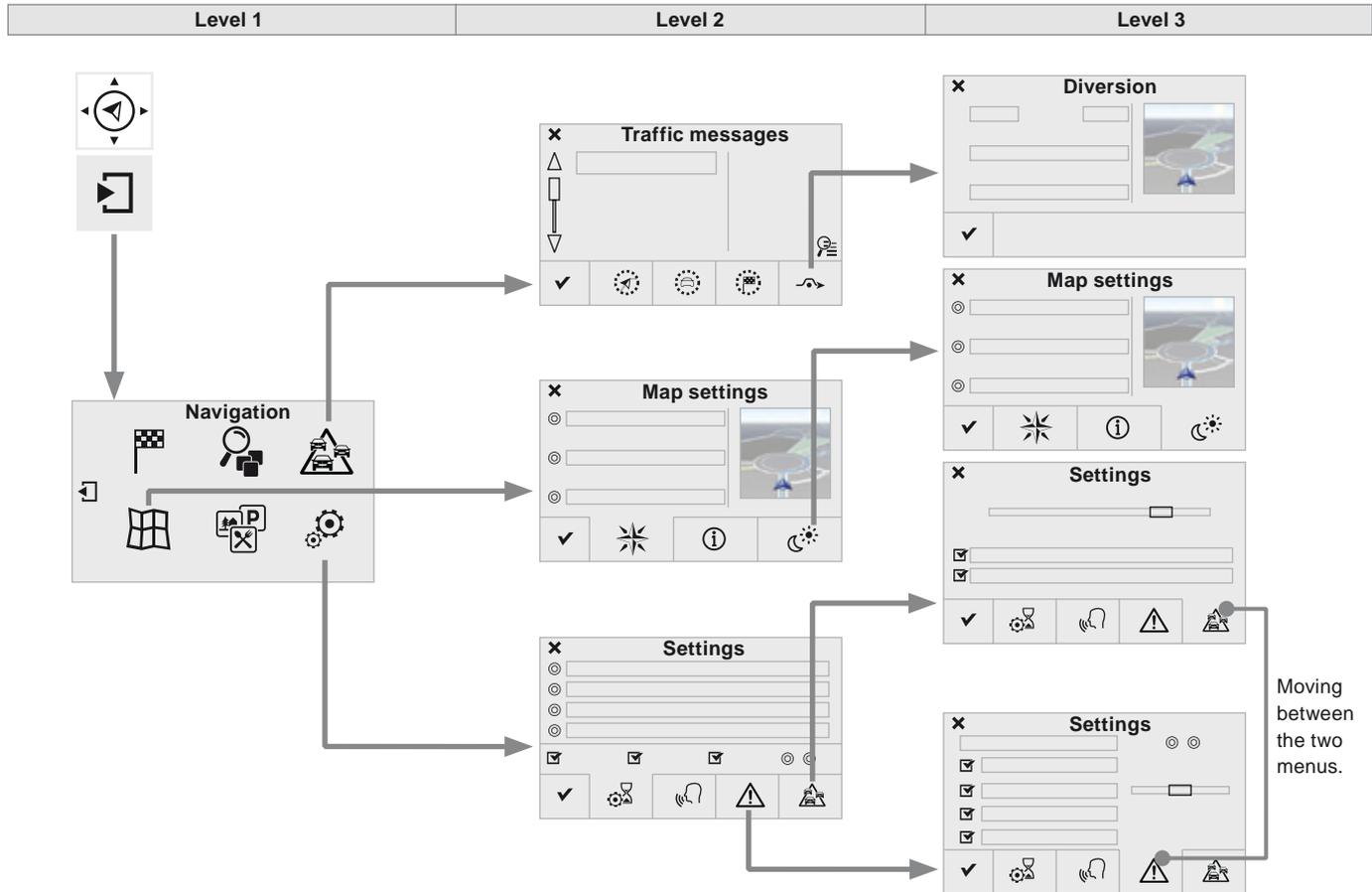
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  <p style="text-align: center;">Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation</p>	 <p>Enter destination</p>	 <p>Route settings</p>	 Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.	Display recent destinations	
			 Shortest			
			 Time/distance			
			 Ecological			
			 Tolls			
			 Ferries			
			 Traffic			
			 Strict-Close			
			 Show route on map		Display the map and start navigation.	
			 Confirm	Save the options.		
	Save current location			Save the current address.		
	Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.		
	Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.		
	Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.		
 <p style="text-align: center;">Navigation</p>				Display in text mode		
				Zoom in.		
				Zoom out.		
					Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.	
				Switch to 2D map.		



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	<p style="text-align: center;"> Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Enter destination </p>	 Address		Current loc.	Address settings	
				Point of interest		
				Town center		
				Save	Save the current address.	
				Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.	
				Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.	
		 Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.	
				View		
				Navigate to		
				Search for contact		
	Call					
 On the map		Display the map and zoom to view the roads.				
 Waypoint & route		Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the route.				
 Stop		Delete navigation information.				
 Navigate to		Press to calculate the route.				



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	Navigation	 All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.	
	↓	 Motor			
	Secondary page	 Dining/hotels			
	↓	 Personal			
	Search for POI	 Search		Save the settings.	
  	Navigation	 Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.	
	↓	 Delete			
	Secondary page	 Import POIs			
	Show POIs	 Confirm		Save the options.	



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments	
  	<p>Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Traffic messages</p>	 On the route				Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.	
		 Around vehicle					
		 Near destination					
		 Detour	<input type="radio"/>	Detour over a distance			
			<input type="radio"/>	Recalculate route			
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Finish					Save your selections.	
  	<p>Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Map settings</p>	 Orientation		<input type="radio"/>	Flat view north direction	Choose the display and orientation of the map.	
				<input type="radio"/>	Flat view vehicle direction		
				<input type="radio"/>	Perspective view		
		 Maps					
		 Aspect	<input type="radio"/>	"Day" map colour			
			<input type="radio"/>	"Night" map colour			
			<input type="radio"/>	Automatic day/night			
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm					Save the settings.	
  	<p>Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Settings</p>	 Route settings				Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.	
		 Voice					
		 Alarm!					
		 Traffic options					
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm				

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



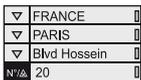
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Select the "**Country**:" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City**:" or its post code, the "**Road**:", the "**N**°:". Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry. The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".

Or



Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact



To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



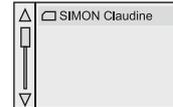
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude**:" then the "**Latitude**:".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**".

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

i An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger zones every month.
The detailed procedure is available on:
<http://peugeot.navigation.com>.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",



"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.



Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Traffic options**".



Select:

- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.



Select "**Confirm**".

i We recommend a filter radius of:

- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



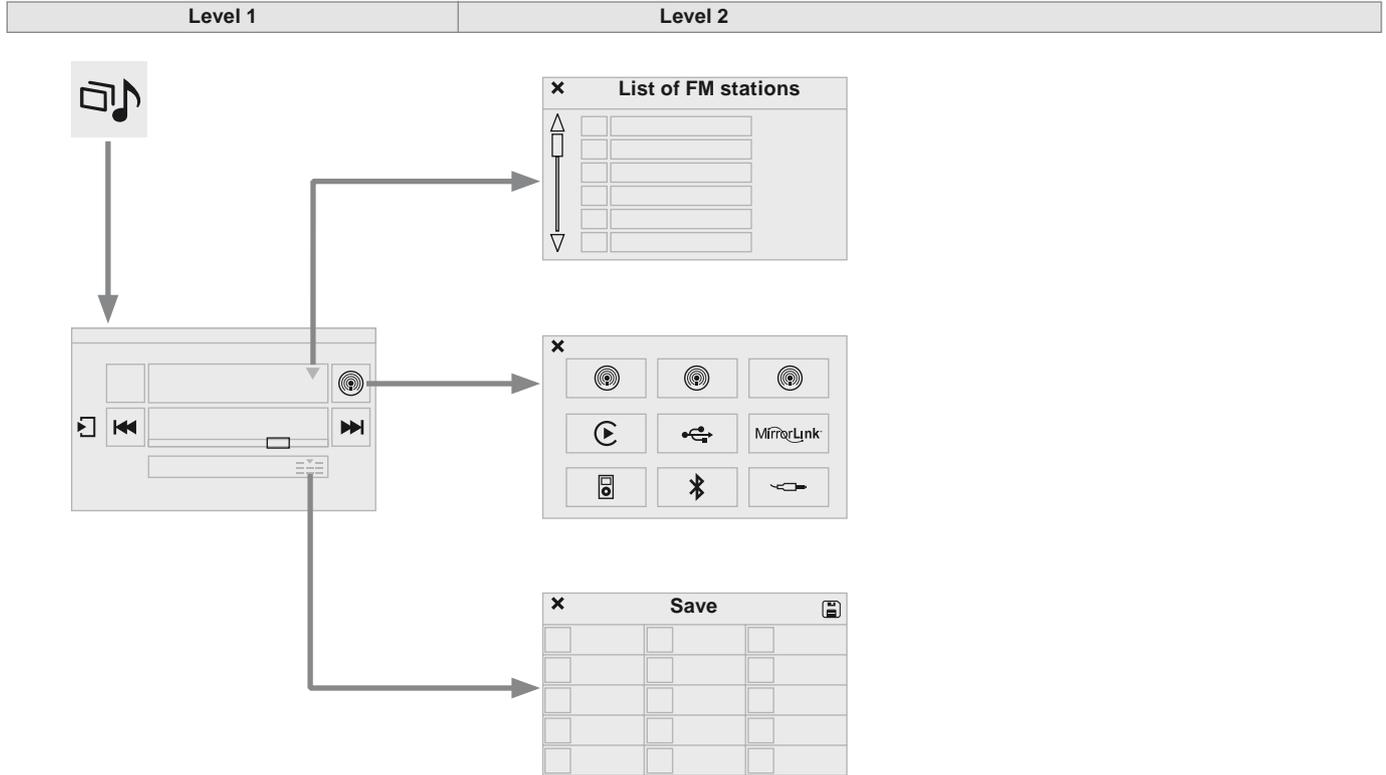
Select "**Voice**".

Off On

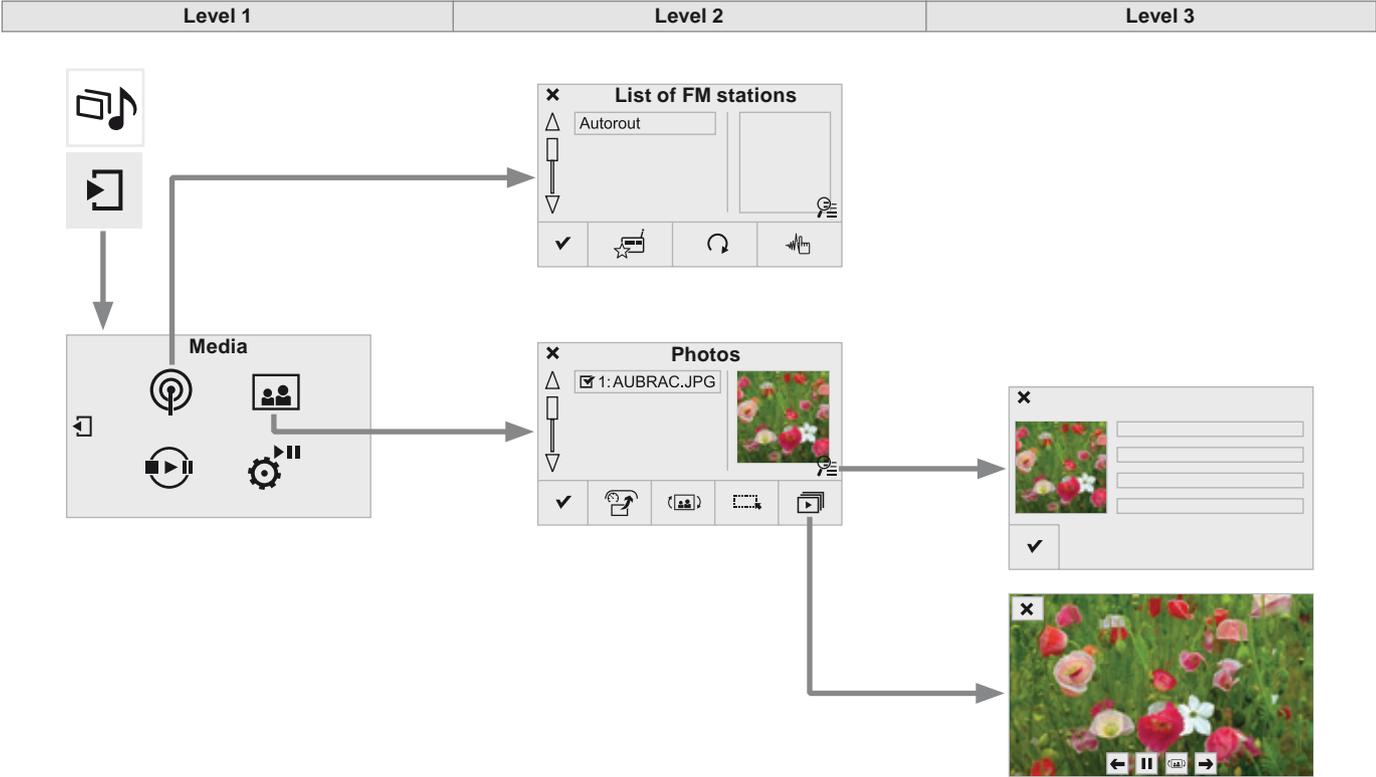
Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

i The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

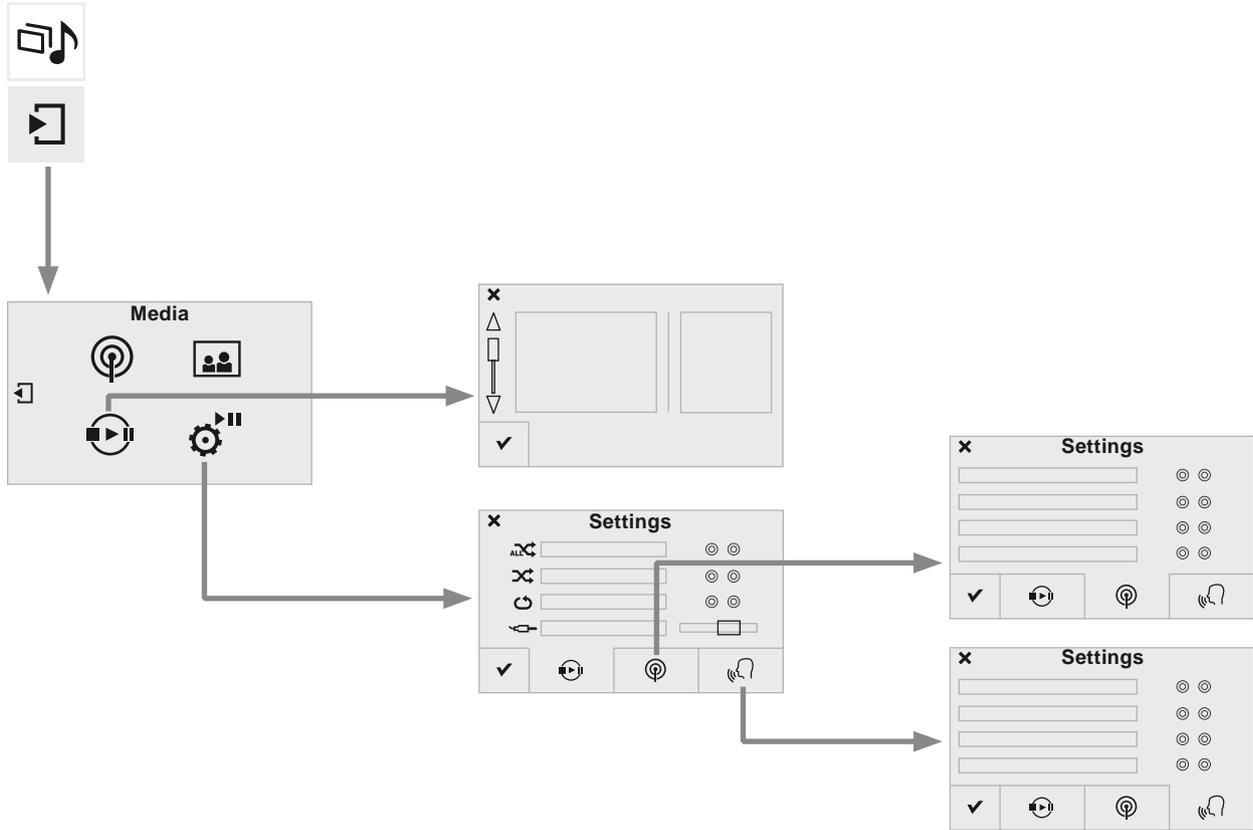
Radio Media



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	Radio Media ↓ List		List of FM stations	Press on a radio station to select it.
 	Radio Media ↓ Source	 FM Radio  DAB Radio  AM Radio  USB  CD  MirrorLink™  CarPlay®  iPod  Bluetooth  AUX		Select the change of source.
 	Radio Media ↓ Save			Press on an empty location then on Save.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments	
  	<p>Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Radio list</p>	 Save				Press a radio station to select it.	
		 Update list				Update the list of stations received.	
		 Frequency				Enter the desired radio frequency.	
		 Confirm				Save the settings.	
  	<p>Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Photos</p>	 Home screen				Display the selected photo in the home page.	
		 Rotate				Rotate the photo 90°.	
		 Select all				Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.	
		 Slideshow	 Previous photo.				Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
			 Pause / Play.				
			 Next photo.				
 Full screen					Display the selected photo full-screen.		



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments	
	Radio Media					Presentation of the last media used.	
	Secondary page						
	Media list						
  	Radio Media ↓ Secondary page ↓ Settings		Media ↓ Settings	 Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.		
				 Shuffle (current album)			
				 Repeat			
				 Aux. amplification			
			Radio ↓ Settings	<input type="checkbox"/> RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.		
				<input type="checkbox"/> DAB/FM station tracking			
				<input type="checkbox"/> Display Radio Text			
				<input type="checkbox"/> Digital radio slideshow display			
			Announcements ↓ Settings	<input type="checkbox"/> Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.		
				<input type="checkbox"/> News - Weather			
				<input type="checkbox"/> Sport - Programmes info			
				<input type="checkbox"/> Flash - Unforeseen events			
			Confirm				Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or



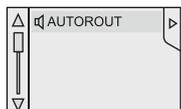
Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.



Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.



If necessary, select the change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground, etc.) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press **◀** or **▶** to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN



Select the change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g. 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



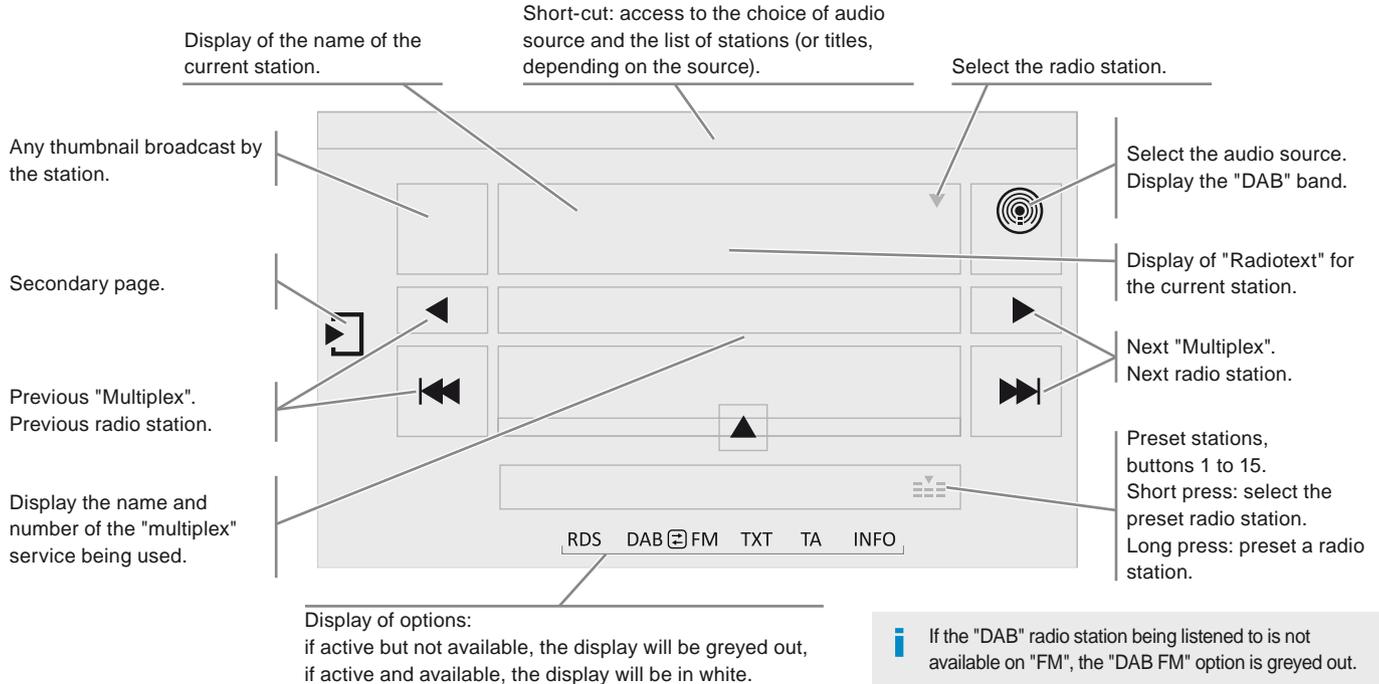
Select "**Radio**".

Off On

Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



! Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems. It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics. This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

- ! Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

- i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



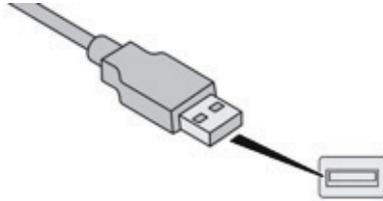
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

- i If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

- ! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

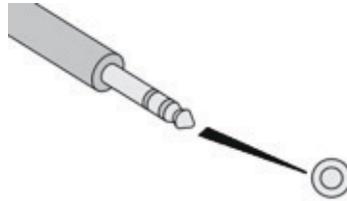


Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

Insert the CD in the player.

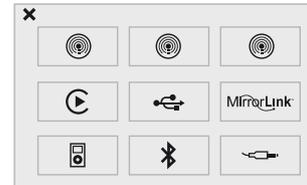
Selecting the source



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select the change of source.



Choose the source.



The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.



Press on **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, etc.) can be played. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type. The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

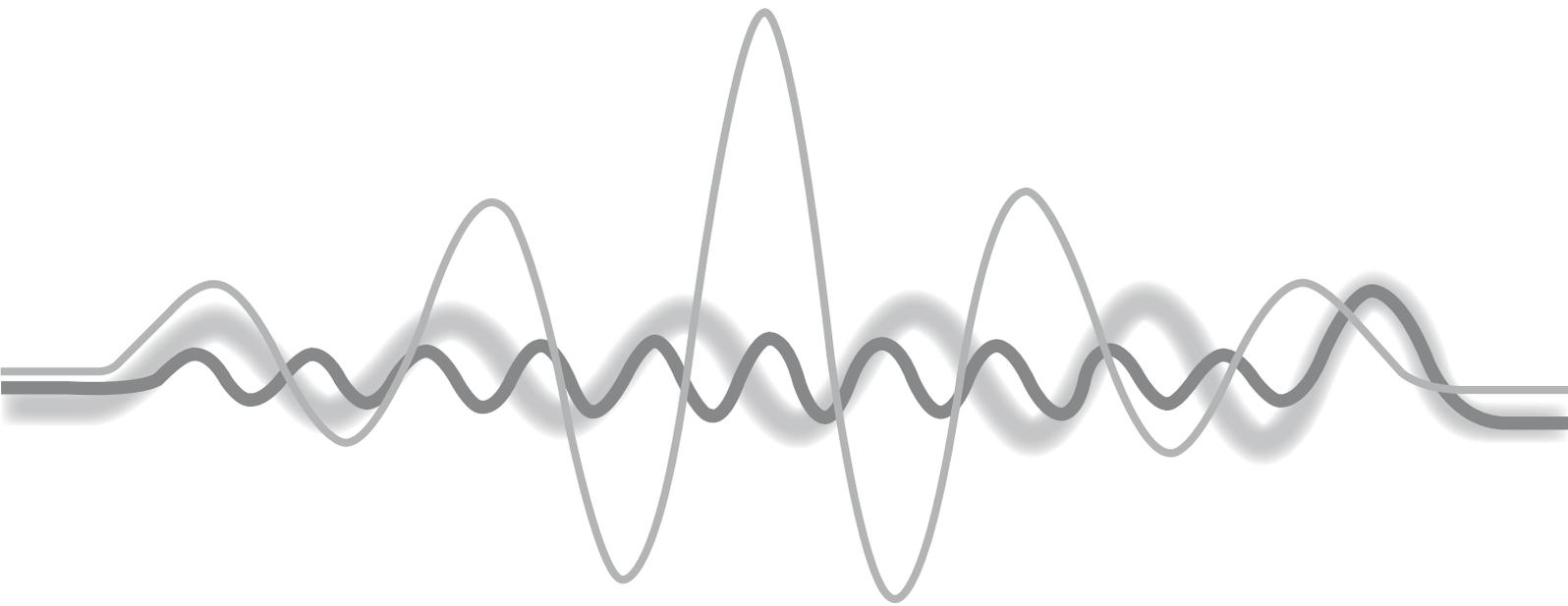
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted to FAT32 (file allocation table).

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

 It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

 The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied. Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

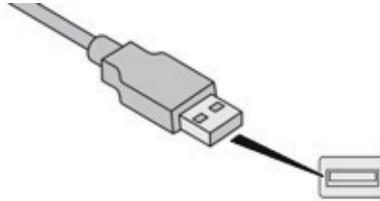
Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



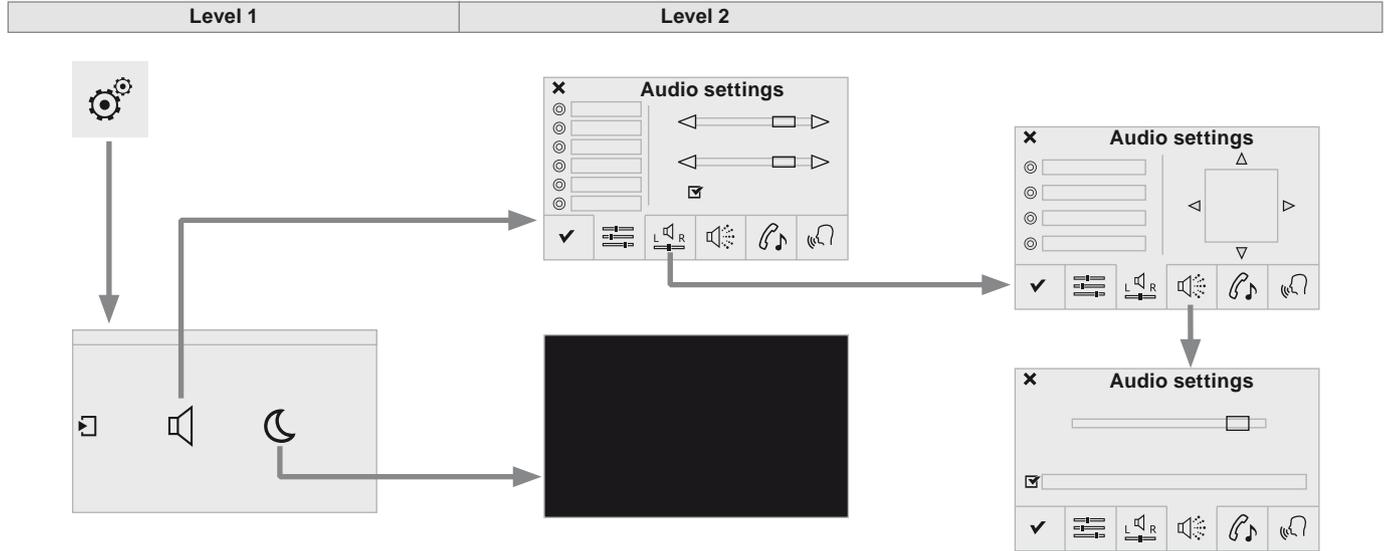
Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

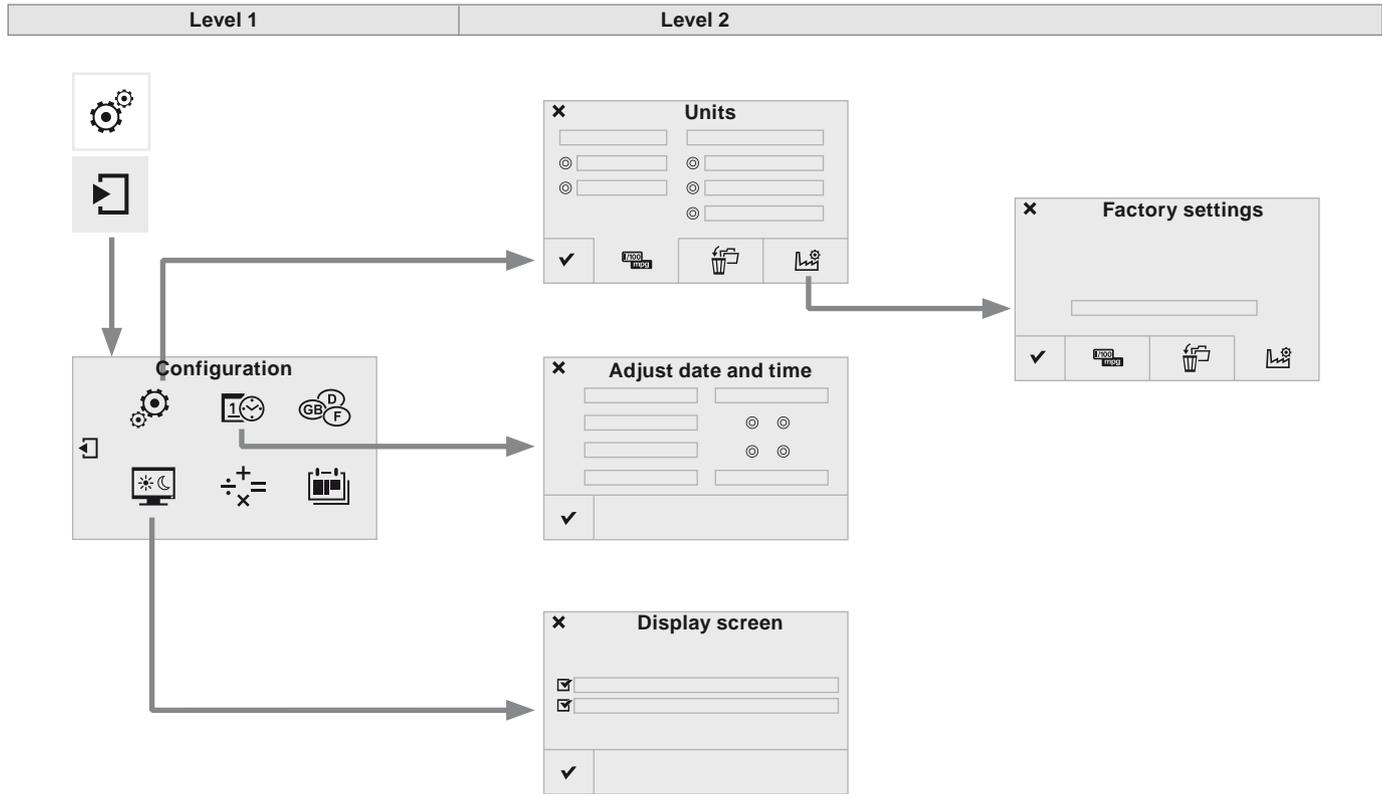
i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Settings

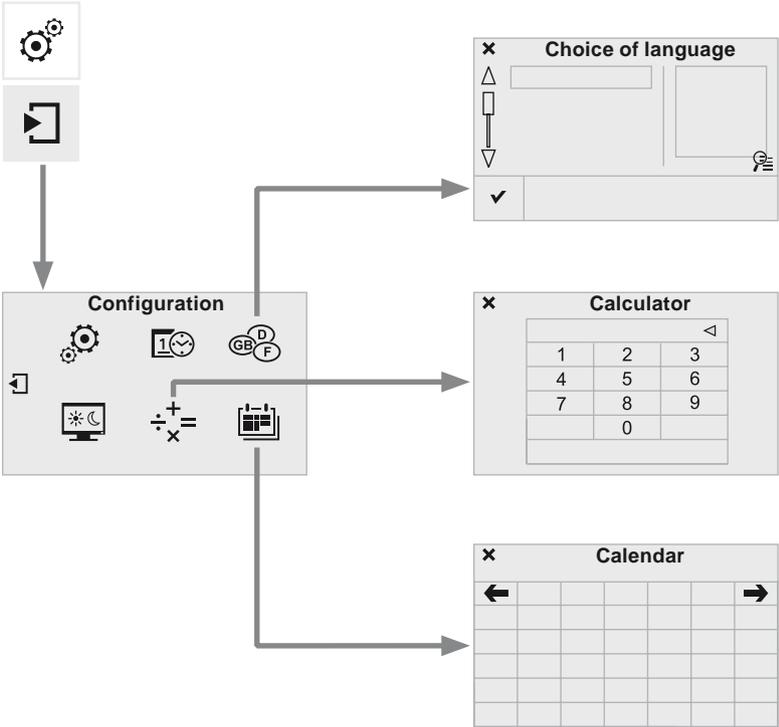


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
 	Settings ↓ Audio settings		Ambience	Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.
			Confirm	Save your settings.
 	Settings ↓ Turn off screen			Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
  	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ System Settings		Units	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
			Confirm	Save the settings.
  	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Time/Date		Confirm	Set the date and time then confirm.
  	Settings ↓ Secondary page ↓ Screen settings	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Activate automatic text scrolling	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Activate animations		
		Confirm		

Level 1 | Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
  	<p>Settings</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Languages</p>	✓	Confirm	Select the language then confirm.
  	<p>Settings</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Calculator</p>			Select the calculator.
  	<p>Settings</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>↓</p> <p>Calendar</p>			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**".

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

! The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble**: and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source. The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

- !**
- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiances)
 - "**Bass**:"
 - "**Treble**:"
 - "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
 - "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
 - "**Audible response from touch screen**"
 - "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

i On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the directory.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.



The system does not manage changes between summer time and winter time automatically (depending on country).



Select "**Languages**" to change language.



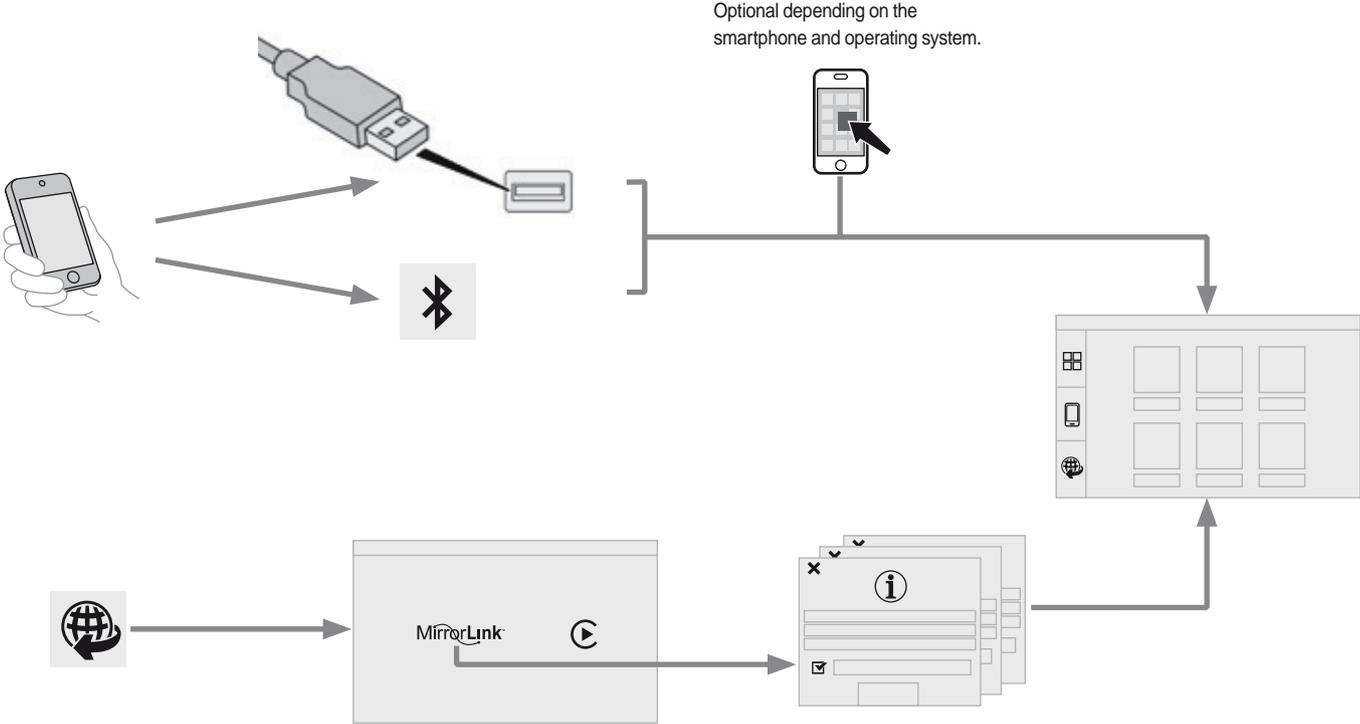
Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services

MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen. The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i Please note:

- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

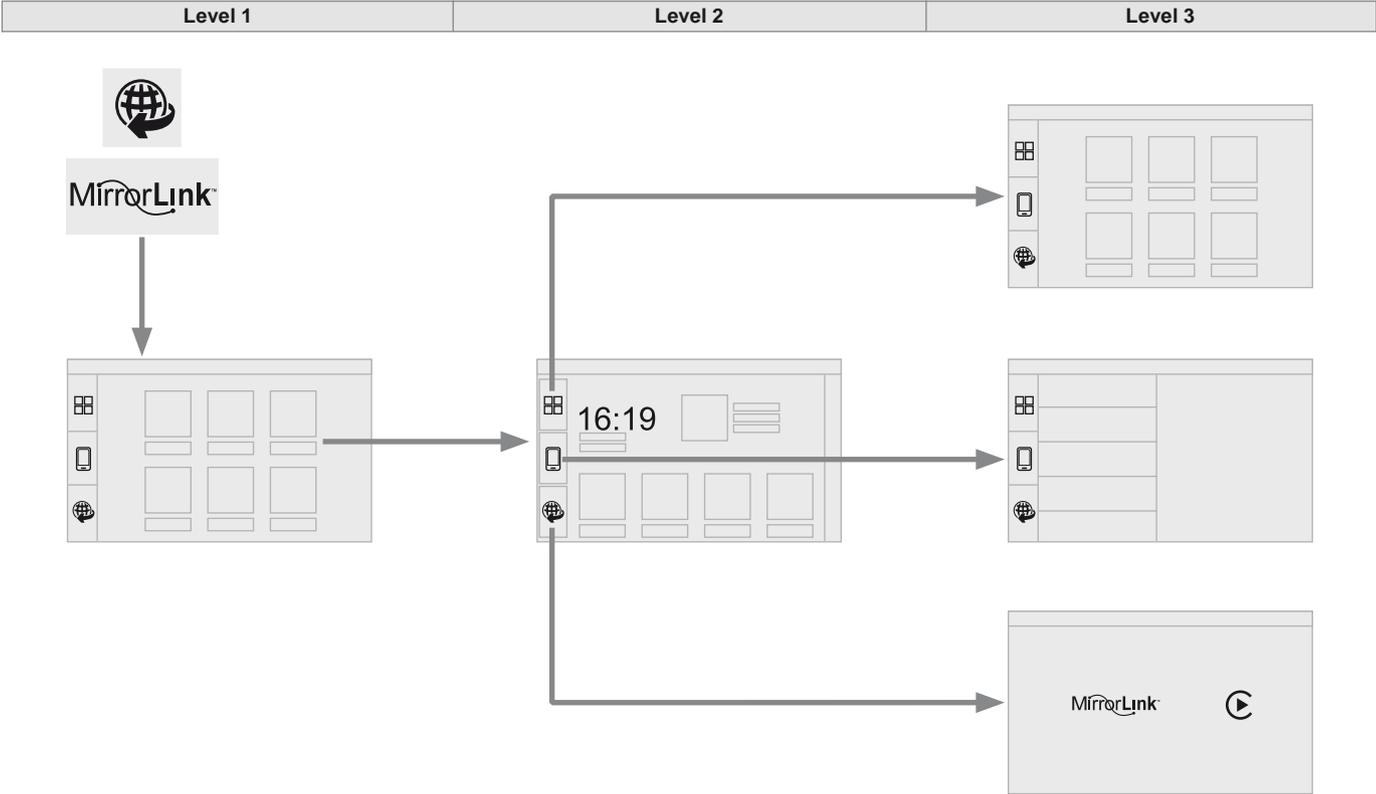
Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology. If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

Voice recognition

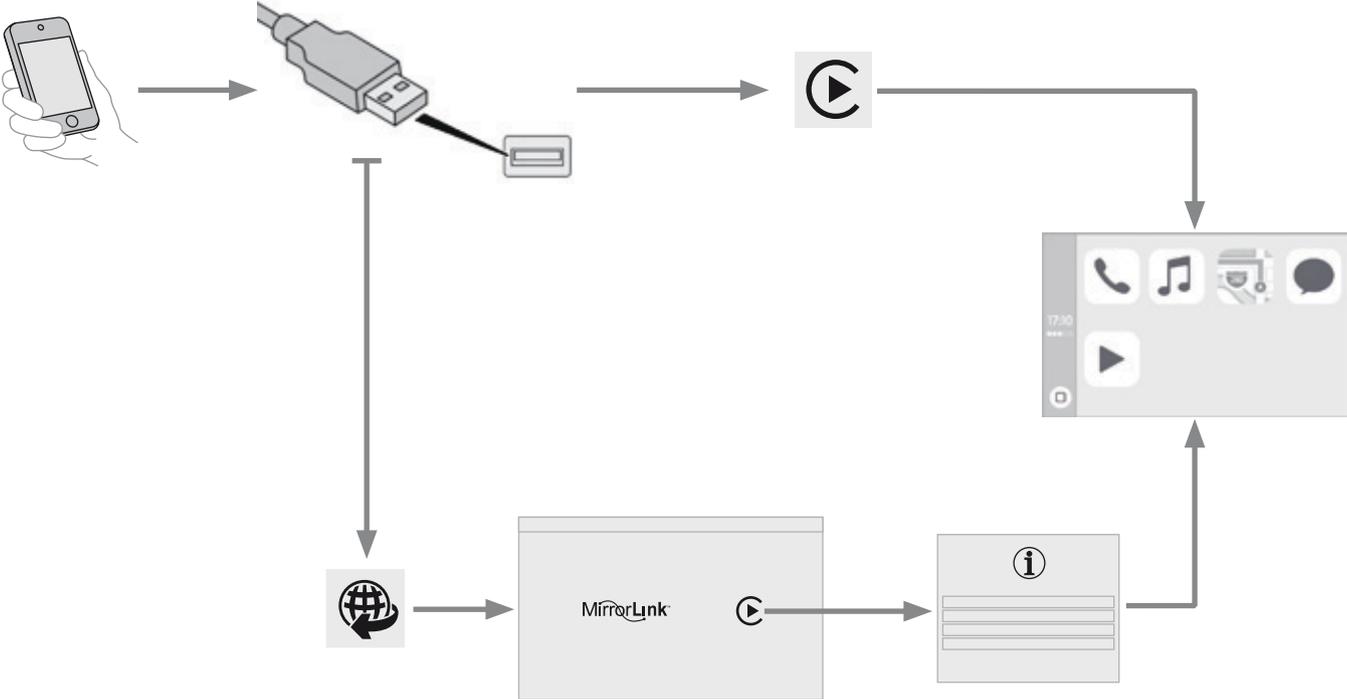
Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	<p>Connected services</p> <p>↓</p> <p>MirrorLink™</p>				<p>Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.</p>	
					<p>Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen.</p> <p>"Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level.</p> <p>"Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.</p>	
					<p>Access to the "Connected services" primary page.</p>	

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed on the vehicle's screen. As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone. For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

i As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



On connecting the USB cable, the **"Telephone"** function changes to **"CarPlay"** in the menu carousel. Press on **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press on **"Connected services"** to display the primary page.



Press on **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

i

During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

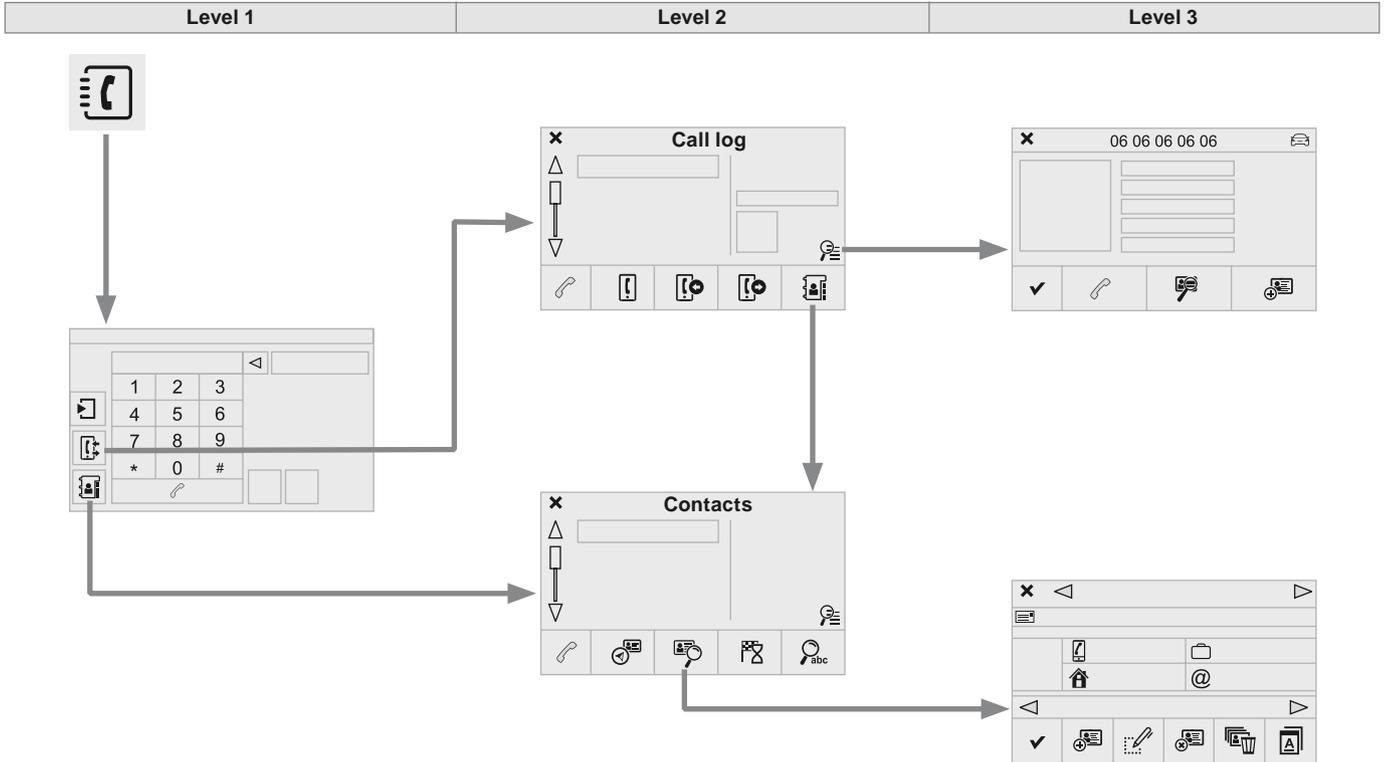
When the telephone menu is displayed, connection of the USB cable causes the display to automatically change to CarPlay mode.

When another menu is displayed, on connection of a USB cable a message is displayed in the upper bar, indicating that CarPlay mode has been activated. Press Open to display CarPlay mode.

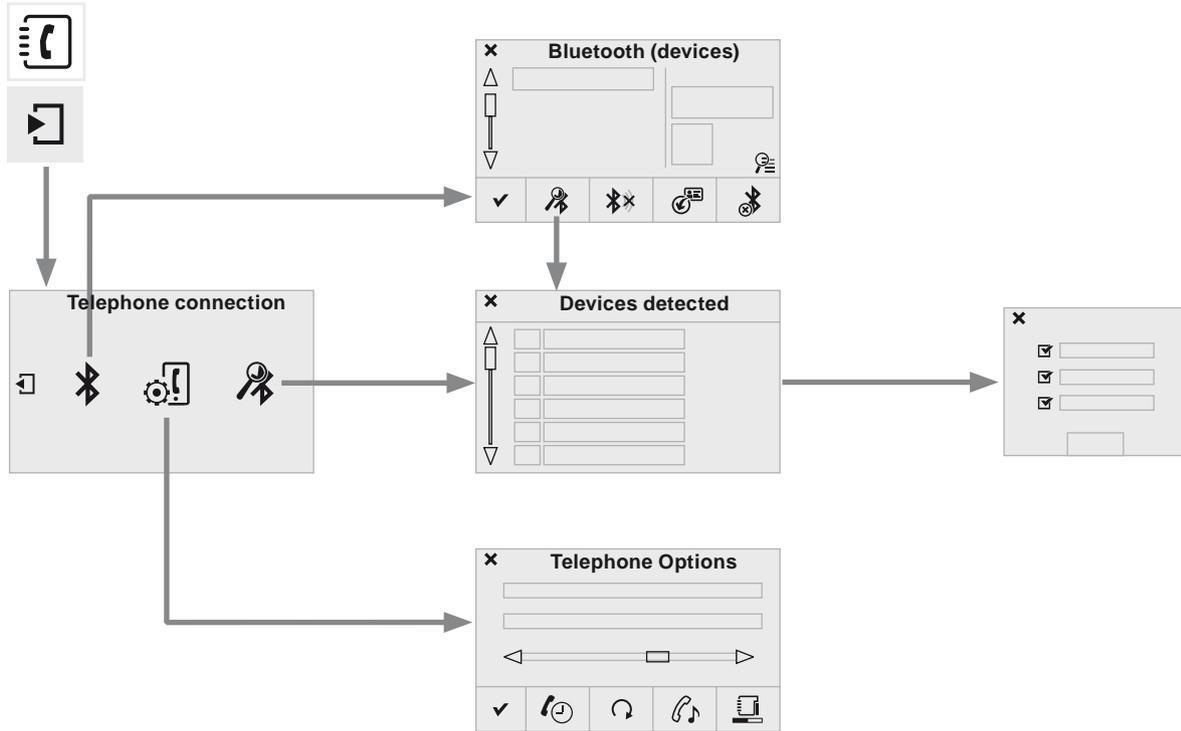
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Telephone



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	Telephone ↓ Call log	 All calls				After making choices, start the call.
		 Incoming calls				
		 Outgoing calls				
		 Contacts				
		 Magnifying glass	 View			
			 Create			
 Call						
 	Telephone ↓ Contacts	 Addresses				After making choices, start the call.
		 View	 Create			
			 Modify			
			 Delete			
			 Delete all			
			 By name			
			 Confirm			
		 Navigate to				
		 Search for contact				
 Call						



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Bluetooth connection	 Search				Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
		 Connect/Disconnect				Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
		 Update				Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
		 Delete				Delete the selected telephone.
		 Confirm				Save the settings.
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for devices			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telephone		Start the search for peripheral devices.
		Devices detected		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio streaming		
				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Internet		
  	Telephone connection ↓ Secondary page ↓ Telephone Options	 Put on hold				Cut out the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
		 Update				Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
		 Ringtones				Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
		 Memory info.				Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
		 Confirm				Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.



Enter this same code in the system, select **"OK"** and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search for devices"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and **"Confirm"**.



Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then **"Confirm"**.

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in **"Audio streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in **"Internet"** (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, (with Bluetooth® activated).

To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad. Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Managing contacts / entries



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of route settings.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (e.g. motorways) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (e.g. tunnel) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song, for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	
The name of the radio station changes.		

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.).	Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio system settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambience is deselected.	The selection of an ambience imposes the settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the settings for treble and bass or then ambience setting to obtain the desired sound environment.
When changing the ambience, the settings for treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired sound environment.
When changing the distribution setting, the balance settings are deselected.		
When the "All passengers" mode is selected, the distribution is not as I would like.	The choice of an "All passengers" distribution setting can be programmed.	Modify the distribution setting using the slider on the touch screen.

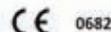
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings (Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume) are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble and Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.peugeot.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display settings in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	



MM-BTEL
SMEG+ IV2



COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

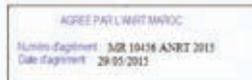


Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment).
이 기기는 업무용(산업) 전자기 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가전과의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.

MSIP-CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2

סמך אישור אילנותי של שידור התקשורת הוא 51-52173

אנאף להחליף את האנטנה הסדורית של הכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר



INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic

CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190

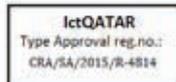
Aprobado CNC C-14786

INCM: 16EBP15

TRC/SS/2015/258



005-101030
AD15-0101005



41554/SDPPI/2015
5142



Agréé par l'ARPT.
Référence d'agrément :
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015



Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

PD 2795

